IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

6"

CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.

CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.

Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol ➡ (meaning "CON-TINUED"), or the symbol ▽ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:
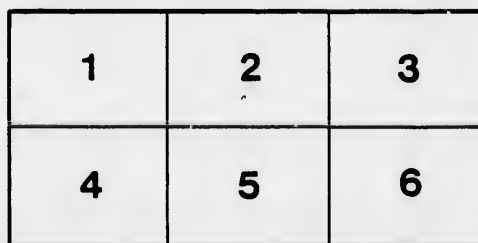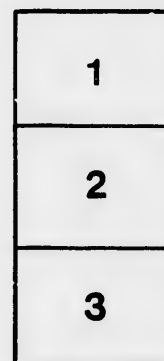
L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de le netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont le couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par le dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole ➡ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▽ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

1	2	3

1
2
3

1	2	3
4	5	6

386

"AUTHORISED SERIES"

OF

TEXT BOOKS,

Sanctioned by the Council of Public Instruction for use in the Grammar Schools of Ontario.

W. C. CHEWETT & CO. have issued special editions of the following on the List, which they offer to the trade and teachers on favourable terms :—

LATIN.

AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D. 60 cts.

A LATIN READER, intended as a Companion to the Author's Latin Grammar. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D. 75 cts.

A LATIN GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By

A S   By
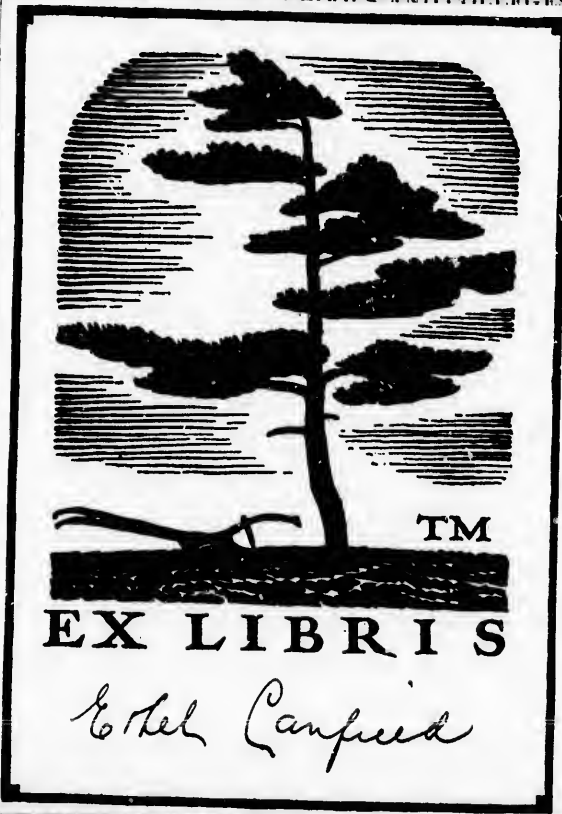
A   an In-
                                                                    0.

A   AGE,
                                                                RTIUS.

                                                                    0-

A   SHARD

FI   JAMES

TH   V. De

A   By

II

II
A

"AUTHORISED SERIES"

OF

TEXT BOOKS,

Sanctioned by the Council of Public Instruction for use in the Grammar Schools of Ontario.

Of the following we have not printed Special Editions, but keep in stock, and sell at lowest prices.

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.

LATIN.

ARNOLD'S FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR, revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D. $1.25.

A LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. $2.50.

THE YOUNG SCHOLARS LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. By JOSEPH ESMOND RIDDLE, M.A. $3.00.

GREEK.

LIDDLE & SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. $2.00.

ANCIENT HISTORY, CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY AND ANTIQUITIES.

A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF BIOGRAPHY, MYTHOLOGY, AND GEOGRAPHY. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D. $3.75.

A DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D. $4.50.

A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. $4.50.

A MANUAL OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. $1.13.

A MANUAL OF GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D., $1.13.

FRENCH.

HISTORY OF CHARLES XII. OF SWEDEN. By VOLTAIRE, 38 cts.

HORACE: A TRAGEDY. By CORNEILLE. 15 cts.

A COMPLETE DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES. By GABRIEL SURENNE. Spiers' New Abridged Edition. $1.50.

Lizzie Jennie White

C L Institute

Woodstock

May 3rd/78

A SMALLER GRAMMAR

OF

THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D.,

CLASSICAL EXAMINER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, AND EDITOR OF
THE CLASSICAL AND LATIN DICIONARIES.

For the Use of the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools.

NEW EDITION.

AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK SERIES.

The Council of Public Instruction having issued a Revised List of Text Books, for use in the Grammar Schools of Upper Canada, the Subscribers have published Canadian editions of the following Books on that list, under the general title as above.

An Introductory Latin Book, by A. Harkness................ C. $0 60
First Greek Book, by A. Harkness..................... ..... C. 1 00
Latin Reader, by A. Harkness............................. C. 0 75
Latin Grammar, by A. Harkness........................... C. 1 00
Smaller Grammar of the Latin Language, by W. Smith, LL.D. C. 1 00
Smaller Grammar of the Greek Language................... C. 1 00
A Manual of Ancient History, by L. Schmitz............... C. 1 25
First Steps in Classical Geography, by J. Pillans........... C. 0 37

The following, which are on the Revised List, but of which we shall not issue Canadian editions, we shall keep in stock, and supply at the prices affixed.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar,
   by J. A. Spencer, D.D............................ A. $1 25
Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary, by Charles An-
   thon, LL.D.................................... A. 2 25
The Young Scholar's Latin-English and English-Latin Dic-
   tionary, by J. E Riddle, M.A........................ A. 3 00
Liddell & Scott's Greek-English Lexicon. School edition..... A. 2 20
Classical Dictionary of Biography, Mythology and Geography,
   by W. Smith, LL.D................................. A. 3 50
Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities, by W. Smith, LLD. A. 4 50
Classical Dictionary, by Charles Anthon, LL.D............. A. 4 50
Manual of Roman Antiquities, by Charles Anthon, LL.D ..... A. 1 13
    "   Greek   "   by Charles Anthon, LL.D...... A. 1 13

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

a 2

Text
ibers
list,

0 60
1 00
0 7r
1 00
1 00
1 00
1 25
0 37

not
ices

25

25

00
20

50
50
50
13
13

PART II.—SYNTAX.

PART III.—PROSODY.

APPENDICES.

A SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy, and over the greater part of France and Spain. The Latin Language is no longer spoken, but the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages are mainly derived from it.

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, being the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Obs. 1. Originally *i* was used to express also the semivowel *j*, and *v* to denote both the vowel sound *u* and the semivowel sound *v*.

Obs. 2. The letter *y* does not belong to the old Latin alphabet, and occurs only in words borrowed from the Greek.

§ 3. The letters are divided into Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a Vowel.

§ 4. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

§ 5. Consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Sibilants, and Semivowels.

The *Mutes* are divided according to the vocal organ which is chiefly employed in pronouncing them.

		Sharp *or* Thin.	Flat *or* Medial.	Aspirated.
Labials	(lip-letters)	p	b	f
Gutturals	(throat-letters)	c (k, q)	g	h
Dentals	(teeth-letters)	t	d	(none).

SM. L. G.

B

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r.*

The *Sibilants* are *s, x,* and *z.*   *X* is compounded of *cs* or *gs :* as, dux = ducs, *a leader;* rex = regs, *a king.* X and z are sometimes called double consonants.

The *Semivowels* are *j* and *v.*

Obs. 1. *K* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: as, Kălendae, *the Calends.*

Obs. 2. *Q* is used only before *u* : as, sĕquor, *I follow.*

§ 6. A *Diphthong* is the blended sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au,* which are in common use; and *eu, ei, ui,* which occur in only a few words.

Obs. The diphthongs *ae* (*œ*), *oe* (*œ*), are pronounced as *ĕ.*

§ 7. A *Syllable* consists of one or more letters pronounced together, and having only one vowel sound.

A Syllable is either *short, long,* or *doubtful,* according as the vowel belonging to it is pronounced rapidly, or slowly, or sometimes rapidly and sometimes slowly. This characteristic of a vowel or syllable is called its *quantity.*

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘) : as, păter, *a father.*

Obs. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, pŭer, *a boy.*

A *long vowel* is marked by (¯), and may be either long by nature : as, māter, *a mother;* or long by position : as, mēnsa, *a table;* dūx, *a leader.* A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

Obs. 1. These marks of Quantity were not used by the Latin writers; serving only for grammatical purposes.

Obs. 2. All diphthongs are long by nature : as, aurāe, *breezes.*

A *doubtful vowel* is sometimes short, sometimes long : as, amŏ or amō, *I love,* tenĕbrae or tenēbrae, *darkness.*

Obs. A vowel is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid, especially *l* or *r:* as, dŭplex or dūplex, *twofold;* tenĕbrae or tenēbrae, *darkness.*

§ 8. *Accent.*—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable : as, músa, *a muse,* dólus, *deceit.*

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long : as, Rōmánus, *a Roman;* or on the last syllable but two, if the last syllable but one is short : as, dómĭnus, *a lord.*

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH.   INFLEXION.   STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech :

I. The NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, or simply SUBSTANTIVE, is the name (Nŏmen) of a person or thing : as, Caesăr, *Caesar ;* vĭr, *a man ;* dŏmŭs, *a house ;* virtūs, *valour.*

> *Obs.* Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns :* all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives.*

II. The NOUN ADJECTIVE, or simply ADJECTIVE (Adjectīvum, *joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature : as, bŏnus vir, *a good man.*

III. The PRONOUN (Prōnōmen) is used instead of a Substantive : as, ĕgo, *I ;* tū, *thou.*

IV. The VERB (Verbum, *word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something : as, ĕquus currit, *the horse runs ;* vir sĕdet, *the man sits.*

V. The ADVERB (Adverbium) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning : as, cĕlĕrĭter currit, *he runs quickly ;* măgĭs pius, *more dutiful ;* sătĭs diū, *long enough.*

VI. The PREPOSITION (Praepŏsĭtio) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words : as, ĭn, *in ;* hăbĭto ĭn urbĕ, *I dwell in the city.*

VII. The CONJUNCTION (Conjunctio) unites words and sentences : as, ĕt, *and ;* ŭt, *in order that :* vir et fēmĭna, *the man and the woman ;* ĕdĭmŭs ŭt vīvămus, *we eat in order that we may live.*

VIII. The INTERJECTION (Interjectio) is a word of exclamation : as, heu, *alas !*

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language : thus dŏmus may be translated by either *house,* or *a house,* or *the house.*

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected : that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (Dēclensio) : the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (Conjŭgātio).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

§ 12. The *Stem* of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away : thus, in trab-s, *a plank,* trăb-ĭs, *of a plank,* trăb-ī, *to a plank,* the Stem is trăb : and in lĕg-o, *I read,* lĕg-ĭs, *thou readest,* the Stem is lĕg.

B 2

CHAPTER III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 13. There are three *Genders*: the *Masculine* (Mascŭlīnum), the *Feminine* (Fēmĭnīnum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

Obs. Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*. The rules for the Genders are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Nŭmĕri): the *Singular* (Singŭlāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūrālis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōmĭnātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, măgister dŏcĕt, *the master teaches;* dŏmus est amplă, *the house is large.*

II. The *Genitive* (Gĕnĭtīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, măgistri dŏmus, *the master's house;* fŏlia arbŏrum, *the leaves of trees.*

III. The *Dative* (Dătīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom? To* or *for what?* as, do librum măgistro, *I give the book to the master.*

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, ămo măgistrum, *I love the master.* It also signifies motion *towards:* as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome.*

V. The *Vocative* (Vŏcātīvus) Case is used for addressing: as, O măgistĕr, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what? When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectŭs est, *he was killed with a spear;* aestātĕ, *in the summer.* It also signifies motion or separation *from:* as, ăbeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome.*

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called Declensions, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in ae

"	"	2nd	"	"	ī
"	"	3rd	"	"	ĭs
"	"	4th	"	"	ūs
"	"	5th	"	"	eī

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural.

(Margin, left side:)
ne (Mascŭ-
euter (Neu

called Common.

e Singular
(Plūrālis),

the ques-
ence : as,
, the house

question
r's house ;

tion To or
o, I give

the ques-
e master.
to Rome.
ressing :

uestions
s est, he
also sig-
I depart

ge are
may be
ngular.
in ae
ī
īs
ūs
eī
tained
nitive

CHAPTER IV. —THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in ă.

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	Mens-ă,	a table	Mens-ae,	tables	
Gen.	Mens-ae,	of a table	Mens-ārum,	of tables	
Dat.	Mens-ae,	to or for a table	Mens-īs,	to or for tables	
Acc.	Mens-am,	a table	Mens-ās,	tables	
Voc.	Mens-ă,	O table [table.	Mens-ae,	O tables	
Abl.	Mens-ā,	by, with, or from a	Mens-īs,	by, with, or from tables.	

Obs. The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive, Dative,* and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones ; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

GENDER.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males : as, nauta (masc.), *a sailor.*

Examples for Declension.

āla,	a wing.	hōra,	an hour.	silva,	a wood.
barba,	a beard.	poena,	a punishment.	stella,	a star.
causa,	a cause.	fēmĭna,	a woman.	vĭa,	a way.
coena,	a supper.	porta,	a gate.	victōria,	a victory.

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a.*

Obs. 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *ās* (a contraction of *a-is*). This ending is kept in fămĭlia, when compounded with păter, măter, fĭlius or fĭlia : as, păterfămĭliās, *the father of a family ; Gen.* patris fămĭliās ; *Dat.* patrī fămĭliās, &c. In poetry the old form of the Genitive *ai* instead of *ais,* is sometimes found : as, aquāī, *of the water ;* terrāī, *of the earth.*

Obs. 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *ārum.* The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of cŏlŭ and gĕnŭ : as, coelĭcŏlum from coelĭcŏla, *an inhabitant of heaven ;* terrĭgĕnum from terrĭgĕna, *earth-born ;* also in drachmum, amphŏrum, from drachma, amphŏra (with numerals) : and in Greek patronymics : as, Aeneădum, from Aeneădēs, *a descendant of Aeneas.*

Obs. 4. The *Dative and Ablative Plural* of some words end in *ābus :* as, deābŭs from dea, *a goddess ;* fĭliābŭs from fĭlia, *a daughter.* This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension : as, deīs from deus, *a god ;* fĭliīs from fĭlius, *a son.* So likewise duābus from duae, *two ;* ambābus from ambae, *both.* See § 68.

§ 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ē, as, ēs* in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined :—

	Feminine.	Masculine.	Masculine.
Nom.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē, abridgment	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ă, ĕ)
Abl.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ĕ (ā).

CHAPTER V.—THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in **ŭs** and **ĕr (ir)**, and of Neuter Substantives in um.

A. *Masculine.*

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
Nom.	Dŏmĭn-ŭs,	*a lord*		Dŏmĭn-ī,	*lords*
Gen	Dŏmĭn-ī,	*of a lord*		Dŏmĭn-ōrum,	*of lords*
Dat.	Dŏmĭn-ō,	*to or for a lord*		Dŏmĭn-īs,	*to or for lords*
Acc.	Dŏmĭn-um,	*a lord*		Dŏmĭn-ōs,	*lords*
Voc.	Dŏmĭn-ĕ,	*O lord* [*a lord.*		Dŏmĭn-ī,	*O lords* [*lordɛ.*
Abl.	Dŏmĭn-ō,	*by, with,* or *from*		Dŏmĭn-īs,	*by, with,* or *from*

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
Nom.	Măgistĕr,	*a master*		Măgistr-ī,	*masters*
Gen.	Măgistr-ī,	*of a master*		Măgistr-ōrum,	*of masters*
Dat.	Măgistr-ō,	*to or for a master*		Măgistr-īs,	*to or for masters*
Acc.	Măgistr-um,	*a master*		Măgistr-ōs,	*masters*
Voc.	Măgistĕr,	*O master*		Măgistr-ī,	*O masters*
Abl.	Măgistr-ō,	*by, with,* or *from a master.*		Măgistr-īs,	*by, with,* or *from masters.*

	Sing.		3.	Plur.	
Nom.	Pŭĕr,	*a boy*		Pŭĕr-ī,	*boys*
Gen.	Pŭĕr-ī,	*of a boy*		Pŭĕr-ōrum,	*of boys*
Dat.	Pŭĕr-ō,	*to or for a boy*		Pŭšr-īs,	*to or for boys*
Acc.	Pŭĕr-um,	*a boy*		Pŭĕr-ōs,	*boys*
Voc.	Pŭĕr,	*O boy* [*boy.*		Pŭĕr-ī,	*O boys*
Abl.	Pŭĕr-ō,	*by, with,* or *from a*		Pŭĕr-īs,	*by, with,* or *from boys.*

B. *Neuter.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	Regn-um,	*a kingdom*		Regn-ă,	*kingdoms*
Gen.	Regn-ī,	*of a kingdom*		Regn-ōrum,	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	Regn-ō,	*to or for a kingdom*		Regn-īs,	*to or for kingdoms*
Acc.	Regn-um,	*a kingdom*		Regn-ă,	*kingdoms*
Voc.	Regn-um,	*O kingdom*		Regn-ă,	*O kingdoms*
Abl.	Regn-ō,	*by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*		Regn-īs,	*by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

GENDER.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: as, pĭrus, *a pear-tree,* Cŏrinthus, *Corinth*; and a few other words: as, hŭmus, *the ground,* alvus, *the belly,* cŏlus, *a distaff,* vannus, *a winnowing fan.*

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: vīrus, *poison*; pĕlăgus, *the ocean*; and vulgus, *the multitude.* The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. *All* Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in ă.

Examples for Declension like *dŏmĭnŭs*.

cĭbus,	*food.*	annus,	*a year.*	nĭdus,	*a nest.*
lŭpus,	*a wolf.*	rāmus,	*a branch.*	hortus,	*a garden.*
nŭmĕrus,	*a number.*	rĭvus,	*a stream.*	cervus,	*a stag.*
mālus (*f.*),	*an apple-tree.*	ulmus (*f.*),	*an elm.*	prūnus (*f.*),	*a plum-tree*

Examples for Declension like *măgistĕr*.

ăger,	*a field.*	cancer,	*a crab.*	făber,	*a smith.*
ăper,	*a boar.*	căper,	*a he-goat.*	lĭber,	*a book.*

Examples for Declension like *pŭĕr*.

sŏcer,	*a father-in-law.*	gĕner,	*a son-in-law.*	Lĭber,	*Bacchus.*
vesper,	*evening.*	ădulter,	*an adulterer.*	lĭbĕrī (plu.),	*children.*

NOTE 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, *Obs.* 1.

NOTE 2. *Vesper* is irregular. See § 53, *Obs.* 2.

Examples for Declension like *regnum*.

dōnum,	*a gift.*	scūtum,	*a shield.*	bellum,	*war.*
tectum,	*a roof.*	vīnum,	*wine.*	templum,	*a temple.*

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as dŏmĭno, regno, pŭĕro, măgistĕro. The *Nominative Singular* originally ended in *ŏs*, and the *Accusative* in *om*: as, dŏmĭnŏ-s, dŏmĭno-m: pŭĕro-s, pŭĕro-m. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *v*: as servŏ-s, servo-m, *a siqve.*

Obs. 2. When the *Genitive Singular* ends in ii, it is often contracted into *ī*: as, fīlī instead of fīlĭī, *of a son*; ōtī instead of ōtĭī, *of leisure.*

Obs. 3. The *Vocative Singular* of fīlius, *a son*, gĕnius, *a guardian spirit*, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in *ī*: as, fīlī *O son*; gĕnī *O guardian spirit*; Laelī, *O Laelius*; Tullī, *O Tullius.*

Obs. 4. The *Genitive Plural* of some words ends in *um* instead of ōrum. This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, nummum from nummus, *a piece of money*; sestertium from sestertius, *a sesterce, a silver coin* (about 2*d.*); mŏdium from mŏdius, *a Roman corn-measure, a peck*; fabrum, from făber, *a smith.*

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are vĭr, *a man*, Gen. vĭr-ī, &c., with its compounds, triumvĭr, &c.; and lēvĭr, īrī, *a husband's brother, a brother-in-law.*

Obs. 6. Deŭs, *God*, is declined in the following manner:

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	Deŭs,	*God*	Deī, Dĭī, or Dī,	*Gods*	
Gen.	Deī,	*of God*	Deōrum or Deŭm,	*of Gods*	
Dat.	Deō,	*to God*	Deīs, Dĭīs, or Dīs,	*to Gods*	
Acc.	Deum,	*God*	Deōs,	*Gods*	
Voc.	Deŭs,	*O God* [*God.*	Deī, Dĭī, or Dī,	*O Gods*	[*Gods.*
Abl.	Deō,	*by, with, or from*	Deīs, Dĭīs, or Dīs,	*by, with, or from*	

The forms *Dei* (*pl.*) and *Deis* are rarely used.

§ 20. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points :—

1. Greek Substantives in *ŏs* frequently have the Greek endings *ŏs* and *ŏn* instead of the Latin *ŭs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ōs* (ωs) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen. i* as well as *o*:

Nom.	Dēlŏs	
Gen.	Dēlī	Andrŏgĕōs
Dat.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕī, Andrŏgĕō
Acc.	Dēlŏn, Dēlum	Andrŏgĕō
Voc.	Dēlĕ	Andrŏgĕōn, Andrŏgĕō
Abl.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕōs
		Andrŏgĕō

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnă* : as, *Andrŏ-geōnă* : so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnă.

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (εύs) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension :

Nom.	Orpheus	Orpheūs
Gen.	Orphĕī, Orpheī	Orphĕŏs
Dat.	Orphĕō	Orpheī, Orphī
Acc.	Orphĕum	Orphĕa
Voc.	Orpheu	Orpheu
Abl.	Orphĕō	

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um* : as, Geōrgĭcōn librī, *the books of the Georgics.*

―――――――――――

CHAPTER VI.—THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or **i**.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives.*

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes **p, b** and in the labial liquid **m**.

Margin notes (left column, partial):

Latin differ

endings *ŏs*
c. *Sing.*

Declension
have in the

ō

rĕō

as, *Andrŏ-*

ion some-
ative and

k ending
books of

of the
stems

abial

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Trab-s** (f.), *a beam*		**Trăb-ēs**,	*beams*
Gen.	**Trăb-ĭs**, *of a beam*		**Trăb-um**,	*of beams*
Dat.	**Trăb-ī**, *to* or *for a beam*		**Trăb-ĭbŭs**, *to* or *for beams*
Acc.	**Trăb-em**, *a beam*		**Trăb-ēs**,	*beams*
Voc.	**Trab-s**, *O beam* [beam.		**Trăb-ēs**,	*O beams*
Abl.	**Trăb-ĕ**, *by, with,* or *from a*		**Trăb-ĭbus**, *by, with,* or *from beams.*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Princep-s** (m.), *a chief*		**Princĭp-ēs**,	*chiefs*
Gen.	**Princĭp-ĭs**, *of a chief*		**Princĭp-um**,	*of chiefs*
Dat.	**Princĭp-ī**, *to* or *for a chief*		**Princĭp-ĭbŭs**, *to* or *for chiefs*
Acc.	**Princĭp-em**, *a chief*		**Princĭp-ēs**,	*chiefs*
Voc.	**Princeps**, *O chief* [a chief.		**Princĭp-ēs**, *O chiefs* [chiefs.
Abl.	**Princĭp-ĕ**, *by, with,* or *from*		**Princĭp-ĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Hiem-s** (f.), *winter*		**Hiĕm-ēs**,	*winters*
Gen.	**Hiĕm-ĭs**, *of winter*		**Hiĕm-um**,	*of winters*
Dat.	**Hiĕm-ī**, *to* or *for winter*		**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs**, *to* or *for winters*
Acc.	**Hiĕm-em**, *winter*		**Hiĕm-ēs**,	*winters*
Voc.	**Hiem-s**, *O winter* [winter.		**Hiĕm-ēs**, *O winters* [ters.
Abl.	**Hiĕm-ĕ**, *by, with,* or *from*		**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from win-*

	Sing.	4.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Urb-s** (f.), *a city*		**Urb-ēs**,	*cities*
Gen.	**Urb-is**, *of a city*		**Urb-ĭum**,	*of cities*
Dat.	**Urb-ī**, *to* or *for a city*		**Urb-ĭbŭs**, *to* or *for cities*
Acc.	**Urb-em**, *a city*		**Urb-ēs**,	*cities*
Voc.	**Urb-s**, *O city* [city.		**Urb-ēs**,	*O cities*
Abl.	**Urb-ĕ**, *by, with,* or *from a*		**Urb-ĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from cities.*

Obs. 1. When a monosyllabic Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *ĭum*, not *um :* as urb-ium. So also below : arx, *Gen. Pl.* arc-ium ; mons, *Gen. Pl.* mont-ium.

Obs. 2. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ĕ* in the last syllable, that *ĕ* is changed into *ĭ* when another syllable follows : as, *Stem* princĕp, *Gen.* princĭp-is. So also below : *Stem* jūdĕc, *Gen.* ūdĭc-is ; *Stem* mīlĕt, *Gen.* mīlĭt-is ; *Stem* nōmĕn, *Gen.* nōmĭn-is.

§ 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes **c, g.**

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Dux** (c. g.), *a leader*		**Dŭc-ēs**,	*leaders*
Gen.	**Dŭc-ĭs**, *of a leader*		**Dŭc-um**,	*of leaders*
Dat.	**Dŭc-ī**, *to* or *for a leader*		**Dŭc-ĭbŭs**, *to* or *for leaders*
Acc.	**Dŭc-em**, *a leader*		**Dŭc-ēs**,	*leaders*
Voc.	**Dux**, *O leader* [leader.		**Dŭc-ēs**,	*O leaders*
Abl.	**Dŭc-ĕ**, *by, with,* or *from a*		**Dŭc-ĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from leaders*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lex (f.), *a law*	Lĕg-ēs,	*laws*
Gen.	Lĕg-ĭs, *of a law*	Lĕg-um,	*of laws*
Dat.	Lĕg-ĭ, *to or for a law*	Lĕg-ĭbŭs,	*to or for laws*
Acc.	Lĕg-em, *a law*	Lĕg-ēs,	*laws*
Voc.	Lex, *O law* [*law.*	Lĕg-ēs,	*O laws*
Abl.	Lĕg-ĕ, *by,* with, *or from a*	Lĕg-ĭbŭs,	*by,* with, *or from laws.*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Jŭdex (c.), *a judge*	Jŭdĭc-ēs,	*judges*
Gen.	Jŭdĭc-ĭs, *of a judge*	Jŭdĭc-um,	*of judges*
Dat.	Jŭdĭc-ĭ, *to or for a judge*	Jŭdĭc-ĭbŭs,	*to or for judges*
Acc.	Jŭdĭc-em, *a judge*	Jŭdĭc-ēs,	*judges*
Voc.	Jŭdex, *O judge* [*judge.*	Jŭdĭc-ēs,	*O judges* [*judges.*
Abl.	Jŭdĭc-ĕ, *by,* with, *or from a*	Jŭdĭc-ĭbŭs,	*by,* with, *or from*

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Arx (f.), *a citadel*	Arc-ēs,	*citadels*
Gen.	Arc-ĭs, *of a citadel*	Arc-ĭum,	*of citadels*
Dat.	Arc-ĭ, *to or for a citadel*	Arc-ĭbŭs,	*to or for citadels*
Acc.	Arc-em, *a citadel*	Arc-ēs,	*citadels*
Voc.	Arx, *O citadel* [*citadel*	Arc-ēs,	*O citadels*
Abl.	Arc-ĕ, *by,* with, *or from a*	Arc-ĭbŭs,	*by,* with, *or from citadels.*

Examples for Declension.

nux (*f.*),	nŭc-is,	*a nut.*	grex (*m.*),	grĕg-is,	*a flock.*
fax (*f.*),	făc-is,	*a torch.*	rēmex (*m.*),	rēmĭg-is,	*a rower.*
pax (*f.*),	păc-is,	*peace.*	pollex (*m.*),	pollĭc-is,	*the thumb.*
fornax (*f.*),	fornāc-is,	*an oven.*	index (*c.*),	indĭc-is,	*an informer.*
vox (*f.*),	vōc-is,	*a voice.*	vertex (*m.*),	vertĭc-is,	*an eddy.*
rădix (*f.*),	rādĭc-is,	*a root.*	falx (*f.*),	falc-is,	*a sickle.*
rex (*m.*),	rēg-is,	*a king.*	merx (*f.*),	merc-is,	*merchandise.*

Obs. Cs and *gs* are contracted into *x:* as, dux instead of duc-s, lex instead of leg-s. In nix, *snow,* Gen. nĭv-is, Dat. nĭv-i, &c., the *Nom.* ends in *x,* because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

§ 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes t, d.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Aetă-s (f.), *an age*	Aetāt-ēs,	*ages*
Gen.	Aetāt-ĭs, *of an age*	Aetāt-um,	*of ages*
Dat.	Aetāt-ĭ, *to or for an age*	Aetāt-ĭbŭs,	*to or for ages*
Acc.	Aetāt-em, *an age*	Aetāt-ēs,	*ages*
Voc.	Aetă-s, *O age* [*an age.*	Aetāt-ēs,	*O ages*
Abl.	Aetāt-ĕ, *by,* with, *or from*	Aetāt-ĭbŭs,	*by,* with, *or from ages.*

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Lăpĭ-s** (m.),	*a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*stones*
Gen.	**Lăpĭd-ĭs,**	*of a stone*	**Lăpĭd-um,**	*of stones*
Dat.	**Lăpĭd-ĭ,**	*to or for a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,**	*to or for stones*
Acc.	**Lăpĭd-em,**	*a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*stones*
Voc.	**Lăpĭ-s,**	*O stone* [*a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*O stones*
Abl.	**Lăpĭd-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from stones.*

	Sing.	3.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Mĭlĕ-s** (c.),	*a soldier*	**Mĭlĭt-ēs,**	*soldiers*
Gen.	**Mĭlĭt-ĭs,**	*of a soldier*	**Mĭlĭt-um,**	*of soldiers*
Dat.	**Mĭlĭt-ĭ,**	*to or for a soldier*	**Mĭlĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*to or for soldiers*
Acc.	**Mĭlĭt-em,**	*a soldier*	**Mĭlĭt-ēs,**	*soldiers*
Voc.	**Mĭlĕ-s,**	*O soldier* [*soldier.*	**Mĭlĭt-ēs,**	*O soldiers* [*diers.*
Abl.	**Mĭlĭt-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Mĭlĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from sol-*

	Sing.	4.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Mon-s** (m.),	*a mountain*	**Mont-ēs,**	*mountains*
Gen.	**Mont-ĭs,**	*of a mountain*	**Mont-ĭum,**	*of mountains*
Dat.	**Mont-ĭ,**	*to or for a mountain*	**Mont-ĭbŭs,**	*to or for mountains*
Acc.	**Mont-em,**	*a mountain*	**Mont-ēs,**	*mountains*
Voc.	**Mon-s,**	*O mountain*	**Mont-ēs,**	*O mountains*
Abl.	**Mont-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a mountain.*	**Mont-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from mountains.*

Examples for Declension.

cīvĭtās (*f.*),	cīvĭtāt-is,	*a state.*	obsĕs (*c.*),	obsĭd-is,	*a hostage.*
virtūs (*f.*),	virtūt-is,	*virtue.*	pars (*f.*),	part-is,	*a part.*
săcerdōs (*c.*),	săcerdōt-is,	*a priest,*	serpens (*c.*),	serpent-is,	*a serpent.*
		-*priestess.*	ars (*f.*),	art-is,	*an art.*
cassĭs (*f.*),	cassĭd-is,	*a helmet.*	frons (*f.*),	front-is,	*a forehead.*
cŏmĕs (*c.*),	cŏmĭt-is,	*a companion.*			

Obs. 1. *T* and *d* are dropped before *s:* as, aetā-s, lăpĭ-s, mĭlĕ-s, mon-s, instead of aetat-s, lăpid-s, mĭlet-s, mont-s.

Obs. 2. In nox, noct-is, *night,* the *Stem* is noct: in the *Nom.* t is dropped before *s,* and the letters *cs* are contracted into *x:* noct-s = noc-s = nox.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids l, r, and the sibilant s.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Consŭl** (m.),	*a consul*	**Consŭl-ēs,**	*consuls*
Gen.	**Consŭl-ĭs,**	*of a consul*	**Consŭl-um,**	*of consuls*
Dat.	**Consŭl-ĭ,**	*to or for a consul*	**Consŭl-ĭbŭs,**	*to or for consuls*
Acc.	**Consŭl-em,**	*a consul*	**Consŭl-ēs,**	*consuls*
Voc.	**Consŭl,**	*O consul*	**Consŭl-ēs,**	*O consuls*
Abl.	**Consŭl-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a consul.*	**Consŭl-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from consuls.*

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
Nom.	Clămŏr (m.),	a shout	Clămŏr-ēs,	shouts	
Gen.	Clămŏr-ĭs,	of a shout	Clămŏr-um,	of shouts	
Dat.	Clămŏr-ī,	to or for a shout	Clămŏr-ĭbŭs,	to or for shouts	
Acc.	Clămŏr-em,	a shout	Clămŏr-ēs,	shouts	
Voc.	Clămŏr,	O shout [a shout.	Clămŏr-ēs,	O shouts [shouts.	
Abl.	Clămŏr-ĕ,	by, with, or from	Clămŏr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from	

	Sing.		3.	Plur.	
Nom.	Ansĕr(m.),	a goose	Ansĕr-ēs,	geese	
Gen.	Ansĕr-ĭs,	of a goose	Ansĕr-um,	of geese	
Dat.	Ansĕr-ī,	to or for a goose	Ansĕr-ĭbŭs,	to or for geese	
Acc.	Ansĕr-em,	a goose	Ansĕr-ēs,	geese	
Voc.	Ansĕr,	O goose [a goose.	Ansĕr-ēs,	O geese	
Abl.	Ansĕr-ĕ,	by, with, or from	Ansĕr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from geese.	

	Sing.		4.	Plur.	
Nom.	Pătĕr,	a father	Patr-ēs,	fathers	
Gen.	Patr-ĭs,	of a father	Patr-um,	of fathers	
Dat.	Patr-ī,	to or for a father	Patr-ĭbŭs,	to or for fathers	
Acc.	Patr-em,	a father	Patr-ēs,	fathers	
Voc.	Pătĕr,	O father [father.	Patr-ēs,	O fathers	
Abl.	Patr-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Patr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from fathers.	

	Sing.		5.	Plur.	
Nom.	Flōs (m.),	a flower	Flōr-ēs,	flowers	
Gen.	Flōr-ĭs,	of a flower	Flōr-um,	of flowers	
Dat.	Flōr-ī,	to or for a flower	Flōr-ĭbŭs,	to or for flowers	
Acc.	Flōr-em,	a flower	Flōr-ēs,	flowers	
Voc.	Flōs,	O flower [flower.	Flōr-ēs,	O flowers	
Abl.	Flōr-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Flōr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from flowers.	

Examples for Declension.

sōl (m.),	sōl-is,	the sun.	aggĕr (m.),	aggĕr-is,	a mound.
exsŭl (c.),	exsŭl-is,	an exile.	carcĕr (m.),	carcĕr-is,	a prison.
cŏlŏr (m.),	cŏlŏr-is,	colour.	mŭliĕr,	mŭliĕr-is,	a woman.
tĭmŏr (m.),	tĭmŏr-is,	fear.	mātĕr,	mātr-is,	a mother.
mōs (m.),	mōr-is,	a custom	frātĕr,	frātr-is,	a brother.

Obs. 1. In some Substantives ending in *ĕr*, the *ĕ* is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as păter, māter, etc.

Obs. 2. The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* and *Nom.* flōs, *Gen.* flōr-is: *Stem* and *Nom.* pulvĭs, *dust*, *Gen.* pulvĕr-is.

§ 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in on.

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
Nom.	Leo (m.),	a lion		Leŏn-ēs,	lions
Gen.	Leŏn-ĭs,	of a lion		Leŏn-um,	of lions
Dat.	Leŏn-ī,	to or for a lion		Leŏn-ĭbŭs,	to or for lions
Acc.	Leŏn-em,	a lion		Leŏn-ēs,	lions
Voc	Leo,	O lion [lion.		Leŏn-ēs,	O lions
Abl.	Leŏn-ĕ,	by, with, or from a		Leŏn-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from lions.

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
Nom.	Virgo,	a maiden		Virgĭn-ēs,	maidens
Gen.	Virgĭn-ĭs,	of a maiden		Virgĭn-um,	of maidens
Dat.	Virgĭn-ī,	to or for a maiden		Virgĭn-ĭbŭs,	to or for maidens
Acc.	Virgĭn-em,	a maiden		Virgĭn-ēs,	maidens
Voc.	Virgo,	O maiden [maiden.		Virgĭn-ēs,	O maidens [maidens.
Abl.	Virgĭn-ĕ,	by, with, or from a		Virgĭn-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from

Examples for Declension.

sermo (m.),	sermōn-is,	a discourse.	hŏmo (c.),	hŏmĭn-is,	a man or wo-
pŭgio (m.),	pŭgiōn-is,	a dagger.	grando (f.),	grandĭn-is,	hail. [man.
lātro (m.),	lātrōn-is,	a robber.	ordo (m.),	ordĭn-is,	a rank.
praeco (m.),	praecōn-is,	a crier.	ĭmŭgo (f.),	ĭmāgĭn-is,	a likeness.
ŏrātio (f.),	ōrātiōn-is,	a speech.	hĭrundo (f.),	hĭrundĭn-is,	a swallow.
pāvo (m.),	pāvōn-is,	a peacock.	ărundo (f.),	ărundĭn-is,	a reed.

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in ŏn (short), the ŏ is changed into ĭ, when another syllable follows : as, *Stem* virgŏn, *Gen.* virgĭn-is. Comp. § 21, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. Cără (*Stem* cărŏn) *flesh*, drops the ŏ in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.* : as, *Nom.* cără, *Gen.* carn-ĭs, *Dat.* carn-ī, &c.

§ 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in i.

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
Nom.	Host-ĭs (c.),	an enemy		Host-ēs,	enemies
Gen.	Host-ĭs,	of an enemy		Host-ĭum,	of enemies
Dat.	Host-ī,	to or for an enemy		Host-ĭbŭs,	to or for enemies
Acc.	Host-em,	an enemy		Host-ēs,	enemies
Voc.	Host-ĭs,	O enemy [enemy.		Host-ēs,	O enemies [mies.
Abl.	Host-ĕ,	by, with, or from an		Host-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from ene-

Examples for Declension.

civĭs (c.),	a citizen.	ŏvĭs (f.),	a sheep.	vestĭs (f.),	a garment.
ăvĭs (f.),	a bird.	fēlĭs (f.),	a cat.	classĭs (f.),	a fleet.

Some Stems end in i or e, and are thus declined :—

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
Nom.	Nŭb-ĕs,	a cloud	Nŭb-ĕs,	clouds	
Gen.	Nŭb-ĭs,	of a cloud	Nŭb-ĭum,	of clouds	
Dat.	Nŭb-ĭ,	to or for a cloud	Nŭb-ĭbŭs,	to or for clouds	
Acc.	Nŭb-em,	a cloud	Nŭb-ĕs,	clouds	
Voc.	Nŭb-ĕs,	O cloud	[cloud.	Nŭb-ĕs,	O clouds
Abl.	Nŭb-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Nŭb-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from clouds.	

Examples for Declension.

clādĕs, a defect. | rūpĕs, a rock. | sēdĕs, a seat.

B. *Neuter Substantives.*

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in ă, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in n, r, s, t.

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
Nom.	Nōmĕn,	a name	Nōmĭn-ă,	names	
Gen.	Nōmĭn-ĭs,	of a name	Nōmĭn-um,	of names	
Dat.	Nōmĭn-ĭ,	to or for a name	Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,	to or for names	
Acc.	Nōmĕn,	a name	Nōmĭn-ă,	names	
Voc.	Nōmĕn,	O name	[name.	Nōmĭn-ă,	O names	[names.
Abl.	Nōmĭn-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from	

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
Nom.	Fulgŭr,	lightning	Fulgŭr-ă,	lightnings	
Gen.	Fulgŭr-ĭs,	of lightning	Fulgŭr-um,	of lightnings	
Dat.	Fulgŭr-ĭ,	to or for lightning	Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,	to or for lightnings	
Acc.	Fulgŭr,	lightning	Fulgŭr-ă,	lightnings	
Voc.	Fulgŭr,	O lightning	Fulgŭr-ă,	O lightnings	
Abl.	Fulgŭr-ĕ,	by, with, or from lightning.	Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from lightnings.	

	Sing.		3.	Plur.	
Nom.	Crūs,	a leg	Crūr-ă,	legs	
Gen.	Crūr-ĭs,	of a leg	Crūr-um,	of legs	
Dat.	Crūr-ĭ,	to or for a leg	Crūr-ĭbŭs,	to or for legs	
Acc.	Crūs,	a leg	Crūr-ă,	legs	
Voc.	Crūs,	O leg	[leg.	Crūr-ă,	O legs	
Abl.	Crūr-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Crūr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from legs.	

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	ŏpŭs,	a work	ŏpĕr-ă,	works
Gen.	ŏpĕr-ĭs,	of a work	ŏpĕr-um,	of works
Dat.	ŏpĕr-ĭ,	to or for a work	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,	to or for works
Acc.	ŏpŭs,	a work	ŏpĕr-ă,	works
Voc.	ŏpŭs,	O work [work.	ŏpĕr-ă,	O works
Abl.	ŏpĕr-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from works.

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom.	Corpŭs,	a body	Corpŏr-ă,	bodies
Gen.	Corpŏr-ĭs,	of a body	Corpŏr-um,	of bodies
Dat.	Corpŏr-ĭ,	to or for a body	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,	to or for bodies
Acc.	Corpŭs,	a body	Corpŏr-ă,	bodies
Voc.	Corpŭs,	O body [body.	Corpŏr-ă,	O bodies [bodies.
Abl.	Corpŏr-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	6.	Plur.
Nom.	Căpŭt,	a head	Căpĭt-ă,	heads
Gen.	Căpĭt-ĭs,	of a head	Căpĭt-um,	of heads
Dat.	Căpĭt-ĭ,	to or for a head	Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,	to or for heads
Acc.	Căpŭt,	a head	Căpĭt-ă,	heads
Voc.	Căpŭt,	O head [head.	Căpĭt-ă,	O heads
Abl.	Căpĭt-ĕ,	by, with, or from a	Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,	by, with, or from heads.

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in en and us are not Neuter : as, flāmĕn, ĭnis (m.), a special priest; Vĕnŭs, ĕris, the goddess of love; lĕpŭs, ŏris (m.), a hare.

Examples for Declension.

flūmĕn,	ĭnis,	a river.	fūnŭs,	ĕris,	a funeral
carmĕn,	ĭnis,	a song.	lătŭs,	ĕris,	a side.
fulmĕn,	ĭnis,	a thunderbolt.	sīdŭs,	ĕris,	a constellation.
sēmĕn,	ĭnis,	a seed.	vulnŭs,	ĕris,	a wound.
murmŭr,	ŭris,	a murmur.	littŭs,	ŏris,	a shore.
guttŭr,	ŭris,	a throat.	pignŭs,	ŏris,	a pledge.
ōs,	ōris,	a mouth.	tempŭs,	ŏris,	a time.
gĕnŭs,	ĕris,	a race.	nĕmŭs,	ŏris,	a grove.
foedŭs,	ĕris,	a treaty.	pectŭs,	ŏris,	a breast.

Obs. 1. The substitution of r for the final s of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change : as, crūs, crūr-is, instead of crūs-is ; ŏpĕs, ŏpĕr-is, instead of ŏpĕs-is ; corpŏs, corpŏr-is, instead of corpŏs-is.

Obs. 2. The u in ŭs of the Nom. Sing. is only an euphonic change of the ĕ and ŏ of the Stem : as, Stems ŏpĕs, corpŏs ; Nom. ŏpŭs, corpŭs.

Obs. 3. In căpŭt, căpĭt-ĭs, the ŭ of the Stem is changed into ĭ when another syllable follows, like the ĕ in nōmĕn, nomĭn-is. See § 21, Obs. 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in i (the *Nom.* in e, al, ar).

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*the sea*		**Măr-Yă,**	*seas*
Gen.	**Măr-Is,**	*of the sea*		**Măr-Yum,**	*of seas*
Dat.	**Măr-I,**	*to or for the sea*		**Măr-Ybŭs,**	*to or for seas*
Acc.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*the sea*		**Măr-Yă,**	*seas*
Voc.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*O sea*	[*sea.*	**Măr-Yă,**	*O seas*
Abl.	**Măr-I,**	*by, with, or from the*		**Măr-Ybŭs,**	*by, with, or from seas.*

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
Nom.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*an animal*		**Ănĭmăl-Yă,**	*animals*
Gen.	**Ănĭmăl-Ĭs,**	*of an animal*		**Ănĭmăl-Yum,**	*of animals*
Dat.	**Ănĭmăl-I,**	*to or for an animal*		**Ănĭmăl-Ybŭs,**	*to or for animals*
Acc.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*an animal*		**Ănĭmăl-Yă,**	*animals*
Voc.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*O animal*		**Ănĭmăl-Yă,**	*O animals*
Abl.	**Ănĭmăl-I,**	*by, with, or from an animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-Ybŭs,**	*by, with, or from animals.*

Examples for Declension.

rētĕ,	*a net.*	mŏnīlĕ,	*a necklace.*	cervīcăl,	*a pillow.*
ŏvīlĕ,	*a sheepfold.*	vectīgăl,	*a tax.*	calcăr,	*a spur.*

Obs. 1. The Stems of *mărĕ* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ĕ* of the *Nom.* being only an euphonic change of the *i:* as, Stem mări, *Nom.* mărĕ.

Obs. 2. The Stems of words whose Nominatives end in *ăl* and *ăr*, end in *ăli* and *ări*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the Nom. Sing.: as, Stem ănĭmăli, *Nom.* ănĭmăl; Stem calcări, *Nom.* calcăr. Hence the *Abl.* in *i*, see §§ 31, 32.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined:

Bōs (c.), *an ox or cow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Bōs	Bŏv-ēs
Gen.	Bŏv-Ys	Bŏv-um or bŏ-um
Dat.	Bŏv-I	Bŏ-bŭs or bū-bŭs
Acc.	Bŏv-em	Bŏv-ēs
Voc.	Bōs	Bŏv-ēs
Abl.	Bŏv-ĕ	Bō-bŭs or būbŭs.

Ĭtĕr, *a journey.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Ĭtĕr	Ĭtĭnĕr-ă
Gen.	Ĭtĭnĕr-Ys	Ĭtĭnĕr-um
Dat.	Ĭtĭnĕr-I	Ĭtĭnĕr-Ybŭs
Acc.	Ĭtĕr	Ĭtĭnĕr-ă
Voc.	Ĭtĕr	Ĭtĭnĕr-ă
Abl.	Ĭtĭnĕr-ĕ	Ĭtĭnĕr-Ybŭs.

Sĕnex, *an old man.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Sĕnex	Sĕn-ēs
Gen.	Sĕn-Ys	Sĕn-um
Dat.	Sĕn-I	Sĕn-Ybŭs
Acc.	Sĕn-em	Sĕn-ēs
Voc.	Sĕnex	Sĕn-ēs
Abl.	Sĕr-ĕ	Sĕn-Ybŭs

Jūpĭtĕr (=Jŏv-pĭtĕr, *i. e.* pătĕr), *the god.*

Jūpĭtĕr
Jŏv-Ys
Jŏv-I
Jŏv-em
Jūpĭtĕr
Jŏv-ĕ.

Vīs (f.) *strength.*

	Sing.	Plur.
	Vīs	Vīrēs
	Vīs	Vīrium
	VI	Vīrĭbŭs
	Vim	Vīrēs
	Vīs	Vīrēs
	VI	Vīrĭbŭs

Jusjūrandum (n.), *an oath,* is properly two words: *Gen.* jūrisjūrandī; *Dat* jūrijūrandō; *Acc.* jusjūrandum; *Voc.* jusjūrandum; *Abl.* jūrejūrandō.

§ 29.

a i (the

n seas.

from

nals

of the
mărĕ.
in ăli
g.: as,
e Abl.

Dat

§ 45.   THIRD DECLENSION.   17

Remarks on the Cases of the Third Declension.

§ 31–32. Stems in i have frequently the *Acc. Sing.* in **im**, the *Abl. Sing.* in **i**, and the *Acc. Pl.* in **is**. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel; as,

Acc. Sing. puppĭ-m,	like mensa-m,	grădu-m,	die-m,
Abl. Sing. puppĭ,	„ mensă,	grădŭ,	diĕ,
Acc. Pl. puppĭ-s,	„ mensă-s,	grădŭ-s,	diē-s.

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant.

§ 35, 36. Stems in i have the *Gen. Pl.* in **ium** with the following exceptions:—jŭvĕnis, *a youth;* vātĕs, *a prophet;* cănĭs, *a dog;* vŏlŭcris, *a bird;* which have the Gen. jŭvĕnum, vătum, cănum, vŏlŭcrum. The three words ăpĭs, *a bee;* mensis, *a month;* sēdĕs, *a seat,* have sometimes the *Gen. Pl.* in **um** as well as *ium.*

1. The following words have also the *Gen.* in **ium**, not *um:*

ĭmbĕr (imbrium), *m. rain.*		Insŭbĕr (Insubrium), *m. name of a*	
ŭtĕr (utrium), *m.*	*a bag made*		*Gallic tribe.*
	of leather.	căro (carnium), *f.*	*flesh.*
lintĕr (lintrium), *m.*	*a wherry.*	ventĕr (ventrium), *m.*	*the belly.*

2. Monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants: as, urbs, urb-ium; arx, arc-ium; mons, mont-ium. So also os (*Stem* oss), *n., a bone, Gen. Pl.* oss-ium; as (*Stem* ass), *m., a small coin, Gen. Pl.* ass-ium.

3. Also the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant:

līs (lītium), *f.*	*a lawsuit.*	măs (mărium),	*a male.*
glīs (glīrium), *m.*	*a dormouse.*	nix (nīvium), *f.*	*snow.*
vīs (vīrium), *f.*	*force.*	faux (faucium), *f.*	*the throat.*
mūs (mūrium), *m.*	*a mouse.*	strix (strĭgium), *f.*	*an owl.*

Obs. The *Nom.* faux is not used.

§ 38–45. Greek Substantives of the Third Declension.   See § 20.

Examples.

	Sing.		Sing.		Sing.
Nom.	Pĕriclēs		Pallas		Părĭs
Gen.	Pĕriclĭs, Pĕriclī		Pallădĭs, Pallădŏs		Părĭdĭs, Părĭdŏs
Dat.	Pĕriclī		Pallădī		Părĭdī
Acc.	Pĕriclem, Pĕriclĕă		Pallădem, Pallădă		Părĭdem, Părĭdă, Părin
Voc.	Pĕriclēs, Pĕriclĕs		Pallas		Parĭ
Abl.	Pĕriclō. [Pĕriclō		Pallădĕ.		Părĭdĕ.

	Sing.		Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Sapphō		chlămўs, *a cloak.*		chlămўdĕs *or* -ĕs
Gen.	Sapphūs, Sapphōnĭs		chlămўdis, chlămўdŏs		chlămўdum
Dat.	Sapphō, Sapphonī		chlămўdī		chlămўdĭbŭs
Acc.	Sapphō, Sapphōnem		chlămўdem, chlămўdă		chlămўdĕs, chlămўdăs
Voc.	Sapphō				
Abl.	Sapphōnĕ.		chlămўdĕ.		chlămўdĭbŭs.

CHAPTER VII.—THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in **ŭs**, and of Neuter Substantives in **u**.

	Sing.	1.		Plur.
Nom.	**Grăd-ŭs,**	*a step*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*steps*
Gen.	**Grăd-ūs,**	*of a step*	**Grăd-uum,**	*of steps*
Dat.	**Grăd-uī,**	*to or for a step*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs,**	*to or for steps*
Acc.	**Grăd-um,**	*a step*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*steps*
Voc.	**Grăd-ŭs,**	*O step* [*step.*]	**Grăd-ūs,**	*O steps*
Abl.	**Grăd-ū,**	*by, with, or from a*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with, or from steps.*

	Sing.	2.		Plur.
Nom.	**Gĕn-u,**	*a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*knees*
Gen.	**Gĕn-ūs,**	*of a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭum,**	*of knees*
Dat.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*to or for a knee*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs,**	*to or for knees*
Acc.	**Gĕn-u,**	*a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*knees*
Voc.	**Gĕn-u,**	*O knee* [*knee.*]	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*O knees*
Abl.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*by, with, or from a*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with, or from knees.*

GENDER.—Substantives in **us** of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

Examples for Declension.

Masculine.

fructus,	*fruit.*	mōtus,	*a movement.*	passus,	*a pace.*
currus,	*a chariot.*	ūsus,	*a use.*	cursus,	*a running.*
sensus,	*a sense.*	căsus,	*a fall.*	cantus,	*a song.*

Feminine.

mănus,	*a hand.*	nŭrus,	*a daughter-in-law.*
trĭbus,	*a tribe* (a division of the	socrus,	*a mother-in-law.*
ăcus,	*a needle.* [Roman people).	ănus,	*an old-woman.*
portĭcus,	*a portico.*	idūs (*pl.*),	*the Ides* (a division of the
dŏmus,	*a house.*		Roman month).

Neuter.

cornu,	*a horn.*	věru,	*a spit.*

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.

Obs. 2. The *Gen. Sing. ūs* is a contraction of *uĭs*: as, grădūs from grăduĭs.

Obs. 3. The *Dat. Sing. uī* is often contracted into *ū*: as, grăduī, grădū.

Obs. 4. The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of the following words end in *ĭbŭs,* but partus and věru have also *ŭbŭs:*—

quercus, also ăcus,
arcus, věru, lăcus,
spĕcus, trĭbus, artus,
portus, pĕcu, partus.

quercus (*f.*),	*an oak.*	lăcus (*m.*),	*a lake, tank.*	artus (*m.*),	*a joint.*
ăcus (*f.*),	*a needle.*	spĕcus (*m. f.*		portus (*m.*),	*a harbour.*
arcus (*m.*),	*a bow.*	& *n.*)	} *a cave.*	pĕcu (*n.*),	*cattle.*
vĕru (*n.*),	*a spit.*	trĭbus (*f.*),	*a tribe.*	partus (*m.*),	*a birth.*

Obs. 5. Dŏmus, *a house,* belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Dŏm-ŭs.		Dŏm-ūs
Gen.	Dŏm-ūs		Dŏm-ŭum *or* dŏm-ōrum
Dat.	Dŏm-uī		Dŏm-ĭbŭs
Acc.	Dŏm-um		Dŏm-ōs (*rarely* dŏm-ūs)
Voc.	Dŏm-ŭs		Dŏm-ūs
Abl.	Dŏm-ō		Dŏm-ĭbŭs.

Hence the memorial line :

Tollĕ *mĕ, mū, mĭ, mīs,*
SĪ dēclīnāre *dŏmus* vīs.

i. e. leave out the endings *mĕ, mū, mĭ, mīs,* if you wish to decline *dŏmŭs.*

Dŏmī is used only with the meaning *at home,* and is probably a dative.

CHAPTER VIII.—THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	Dĭ-ēs,	*a day*	Dĭ-ēs,	*days*	
Gen.	Dĭ-ēī,	*of a day*	Dĭ-ērum,	*of days*	
Dat.	Dĭ-ēī,	*to* or *for a day*	Dĭ-ēbŭs,	*to* or *for days*	
Acc.	Dĭ-em,	*a day*	Dĭ-ēs,	*days*	
Voc.	Dĭ-ēs,	*O day*	[*day.*	Dĭ-ēs,	*O days*
Abl.	Dĭ-ē,	*by, with,* or *from a*	Dĭ-ēbŭs,	*by, with,* or *from days.*	

GENDER.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine : excepting dies, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine : also merīdies (*m.*), *noon,* which is a compound of dies.

Examples for Declension.

rēs,	*a thing.*	effĭgiēs,	*a likeness.*	spĕciēs,	*appearance.*
ăciēs,	*a point.*	fĭdēs,	*faith.*	spēs,	*hope.*
făciēs,	*a face.*	sēriēs,	*a series.*	merīdies (*m.*),	*noon.*

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e.*

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in eī is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant : as, dĭ-ēī, făcĭ-ēī; but, rĕī, fĭdĕī.

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē* : as, dīē, fĭdē.

Obs. 4. Rēs and dĭēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural.

CHAPTER IX.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: as, fās, *permitted by divine law;* nĕfās, *opposed to divine law;* nĭhĭl, *nothing;* instăr, *resemblance.*

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: as, justĭtia, *justice;* fămēs, *hunger;* aurum, *gold.*

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: as, nuptiae, *a marriage;* fĕriae, *holidays;* tĕnebrae, *darkness;* lībĕrī, *children;* armă, *arms.*

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
Aedēs,	*a temple;*	aedēs,	*a house.*
Ăqua,	*water;*	ăquae,	*medicinal springs.*
Auxĭlium,	*help;*	auxĭlia,	*auxiliary forces.*
Carcĕr,	*a prison;*	carcĕrēs,	*a starting-place.*
Castrum,	*a fort;*	castră,	*a camp.*
Cŏmĭtium,	*the place of Assembly;*	Cŏmĭtiă,	*the Assembly itself.*
Cōpia,	*plenty;*	cōpiae,	*forces.*
Fortūna,	*fortune;*	fortūnae,	*the gifts of fortune, [property.*
Grātia,	*favour;*	grātiae,	*thanks.*
Impĕdīmentum,	*a hindrance;*	impĕdīmentă,	*baggage.*
Littĕra,	*a letter of the alphabet;*	littĕrae,	*an epistle.*
Lūdus,	*play, school;* [bet;	lūdĭ,	*public games.*
Ŏpĕra,	*exertion;*	ŏpĕrae,	*workmen.*
Ŏpis (Gen.),	*help;*	ŏpēs,	*power, wealth.*
Pars,	*a portion;*	partes,	*a part in a play.*
Rostrum,	*a beak;*	rostră,	*the platform for speakers in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of ships).*
Tăbŭla,	*a board, picture;*	tăbŭlae,	*writing tablets.*

§ 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases: as,

fors (*f.*), *chance.* Only *Nom.* and *Abl. Sing.* fortĕ (without Plural).
(cps) ŏpis (*f.*), *help.* Only *Gen., Acc., Abl., Sing.* ŏpĭs, ŏpem, ŏpĕ.   Full Plural.

(prex, prĕcis) (*f.*), *prayer.* Only *Dat., Acc.,* and *Abl. Sing.* Full Plural.
(vĭcĭs), *change.* Only *Gen., Acc., Abl. Sing.* vĭcĭs, vĭcem, vĭcĕ. Full Plural, except *Gen.*

§ 53. Some Substantives are *Hĕtĕrŏclĭtă,* that is, have a two-fold Declension.

1. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions: as, dŏmus, *a house* (see § 46, *Obs.* 5); laurus, *a bay-tree;* cŭpressus, *a cypress;* fĭcus, *a fig-tree;* pĭnus, *a pine-tree.*
2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions: as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbĕĭ, *the commonalty.*
3. Jūgĕrum, *an acre,* is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.,* but of the Third in the *Plur.:* as, jūgĕră, jūgĕrum, jūgĕrĭbŭs. Vās, vāsis, *a vessel,* is of the Third Declension in the Sing., but of the Second in the Plural: as vāsă, vāsōrum, vāsĭs.

§ 54. Some Substantives are *Hĕtĕrŏgĕnĕă,* that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural

	Sing.			Plur.
jŏcus (*m.*),	*a joke.*		jŏcī (*m.*), jŏcă (*n.*)	
lŏcus (*m.*),	*a place.*		lŏcī (*m.*), lŏcă (*n.*)	
carbăsus (*f.*),	*fine linen.*		carbăsă (*n.*), *sails.*	
coelum (*n.*),	*heaven.*		coeli (*m.*) (rare).	
frēnum (*n.*),	*a bit.*		frēnī (*m.*), frēnă (*n.*)	
Tartărus (*m.*),	*the infernal regions.*		Tartără (*n.*)	
rastrum (*n.*),	*a rake.*		rastrī (*m.*), rastră (*n.*)	

CHAPTER X.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS ARE DIVIDED INTO TWO CLASSES.

Adjectives of the first class end in *ŭs, ă, um,* or *ĕr, ă, um,* and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good;* nĭgĕr, nigră, nigrum, *black;* tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.*

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
	M. F. N.			M. F. N.	
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Gen.	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Acc.	Bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ăs	bŏn-ă
Voc.	Bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Abl.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
	M. F. N.			M. F. N.	
Nom.	Nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ăs	nigr-ă
Voc.	Nĭg-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Těněr	těněr-ă	těněr-um	Těněr-ī	těněr-ae	těněr-ă
Gen.	Těněr-ī	těněr-ae	těněr-ī	Těněr-ōrum	těněr-ārum	těněr-ōrum
Dat.	Těněr-ō	těněr-ae	těněr-ō	Těněr-īs	těněr-īs	těněr-īs
Acc.	Těněr-um	těněr-am	těněr-um	Těněr-ōs	těněr-īs	těněr-īs
Voc.	Těněr	těněr-ă	těněr-um	Těněr-ī	těněr-ae	těněr-ă
Abl.	Těněr-ō	těněr-ă	těněr-ō	Těněr-īs	těněr-īs	těněr-īs

Examples for Declension.

mălus,	a,	um,	*bad.*	sŭperbus,	a,	um,	*proud.*
cārus,	a,	um,	*dear.*	săcer,	cra,	rum,	*sacred.*
clārus,	a,	um,	*bright.*	aeger,	gra,	rum,	*sick.*
plēnus,	a,	um,	*full.*	măcer,	cra,	rum,	*lean.*
albus,	a,	um,	*white.*	pulcher,	chra,	rum,	*beautiful.*
magnus,	a,	um,	*great.*	rŭber,	bra,	rum,	*red.*
parvus,	a,	um,	*little.*	sĭnister,	tra,	rum,	*left.*

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like těněr are the following :—

asper,	ěra, ěrum,	*rough.*	lĭber, ěra, ěrum, *free.*
lăcer,	ěra, ěrum,	*torn.*	mĭser, ěra, ěrum, *wretched.*
prosper,	ěra, ěrum,	*prosperous.*	

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger* : as,

lānĭger, ěra, ěrum,   *wool-bearing.* | ŏpĭfer, ěra, ěrum, *help-bringing.*

All other Adjectives in *ěr* drop the *ě*, and are declined like nĭger. *Dextěr* is declined in both ways, dextěră and dextră, dextěrum *t* nd dextrum.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective in *ŭr*, sătŭr, sătŭră, sătŭrum, *full of food,* sated.

§ 57. *Irregular Declension in* us, a, um, *and* er, a, um.

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

ūnŭs, sōlŭs, tōtŭs, ullŭs,
ŭtěr, neutěr, altěr, nullŭs,
and ălĭŭs,

have in the Genitive Sing. *ius* and in the Dative *i*. For example—

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ull-ŭs	ull-ă	ull-um	Ŭt-ěr	utr-ă	utr-um
Gen.	Ull-īŭs			Utr-īŭs		
Dat.	Ull-ī			Utr-ī		
Acc.	Ull-um	ull-am	ull-um	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Abl.	Ull-ō	ull-ă	ull-ō	Utr-ō	utr-ă	utr-ō

ūnus,	*one.*	ullus,	*any.*	neuter,	*neither of two.*
sōlus,	*alone.*	nullus,	*none.*	alter,	*one of two.*
tōtus,	*whole.*	ŭter,	*which of two.*	ălĭus,	*one of any number, another.*

Obs. 1. In prose the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is always long, except in altěrĭŭs. The Gen. ălĭŭs is a contraction of ălĭ-īŭs, and therefore always *long*. In the other words the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is short as well as long in poetry.

Obs. 2. The compounds of ŭtěr are declined in the same way : as, ŭterquě, ŭtervīs, ŭterlĭbět, ŭtereunquě : *Gen.* utriusque, utriusvīs, etc.

N.
tĕnĕr-ă
m tĕnĕr-ōrum
tĕnĕr-ĭs
tĕnĕr-ă
tĕnĕr-ă
tĕnĕr-ĭs

proud.
sacred.
sick.
lean.
beautiful.
red.
left.

g :—
free.
wretched.

p-bringing.
ager.
extĕrum ı nd
full of food,

m.

le—
N.
tr-um

tr-um
tr-ō

, another.

rĭŭs. The
y. In the
ry.
, ŭterquĕ,

§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in er, ris, re, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: as, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp*.

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Acĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	Acrēs	ācrĭă
Gen.	Acrĭs		—	Acrium	
Dat.	Acrī		—	Acrĭbŭs	
Acc.	Acrem		ācrĕ	Acrēs	ācrĭă
Voc.	Acĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	Acrēs	ācrĭă
Abl.	Acrī		—	Acrĭbŭs	—

Obs. The termination er is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

ācer, ălăcer, campester,
cĕler, cĕlĕber, ĕquester,
pŭter, vŏlŭcer, terrester,
păluster, pĕdester,
sălūber, silvester.

ălăcer,	*lively.*	vŏlŭcer,	*winged.*
campester,	*level.*	terrester,	*pertaining to the earth.*
cĕler,	*quick.*	păluster,	*marshy.*
cĕlĕber,	*crowded.*	pĕdester,	*pedestrian.*
ĕquester,	*equestrian.*	sălūber,	*healthful.*
pŭter,	*rotten.*	silvester,	*woody.*

Obs. 1. Cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the e before the r. Cĕlĕr has um, not ium, in the Gen. Pl.

Obs. 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination ris in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.*

§ 59. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, tristĭs, tristĕ, *sad;* altior, altius, *higher* (§ 63).

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
Fem.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	Trist-ĭs	—	Trist-ium	—
Dat.	Trist-ī	—	Trist-ĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Voc.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Abl.	Trist-ī	—	Trist-ĭbŭs	

Examples for Declension.

lĕvis,	*light.*	brĕvis,	*short.*	mollis,	*soft.*
lēvis,	*smooth.*	fortis,	*brave.*	făcĭlis,	*easy.*
grăvis,	*heavy.*	turpis,	*disgraceful.*	vīlis,	*cheap.*
dulcis,	*sweet.*	sĭmĭlis,	*like.*	hŭmĭlis,	*low.*

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, fēlix, *fortunate*; prūdens, *prudent*.

1.

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Gen.	Fēlīc-ĭs	—	Fēlīc-ium	
Dat.	Fēlīc-ī	—	Fēlīc-ĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Fēlīc-em	fēlix	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Voc.	Fēlix	—	Fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Abl.	Fēlīc-ī *or* ĕ	—	Fēlīc-ĭbŭs	-

2.

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Prūdens	prūdens	Prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Gen.	Prūdent-ĭs	—	Prūdent-ĭum	—
Dat.	Prūdent-ī	—	Prūdent-ĭbŭs	
Acc.	Prūdent-em	prūdens	Prūdent-ēs	—
Voc.	Prūdens	—	Prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Abl.	Prūdent-ī *or* ĕ	—	Prūdent-ĭbŭs	—

Examples for Declension.

audax,	ācis,	*bold.*	pŏtens,	entis,	*powerful.*
vĕrax,	ācis,	*truthful.*	ingens,	entis,	*huge.*
lŏquax,	ācis,	*talkative.*	dīlĭgens,	entis,	*diligent.*
vēlox,	ōcis,	*swift.*	săpĭens,	entis,	*wise.*
fĕrox,	ōcis,	*haughty.*	praesens,	entis,	*present.*

Obs. 1. On the *Abl. Sing.*, see §§ 31, 32. On the *Gen. Plur.* in *ium*, see §§ 35, 36.

Obs. 2. Dīvĕs, dīvĭtĭs, *rich*, has a contracted form: *Nom.* dīs, dītĕ; *Gen.* dīt-ĭs, &c.; *Nom. Plur.* Neut. dītĭă.

Obs. 3. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, nēquam, *worthless;* frūgī, *honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): as, frūgī hŏmŏ, frūgī hŏmĭnem.

CHAPTER XI.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
altŭs, *high.*	altĭŏr, *higher.*	altissĭmŭs, *highest.*

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding ĭŏr, and the Superlative by adding issĭmŭs, to the Stem, any final vowel of which is dropped: as,

§ 60.

Nom.	Posit. Stem.		Comp.	Sup.
altŭs,	alto,	*high,*	alt-iŏr,	alt-issĭmŭs.
lĕvĭs,	lĕvi,	*light,*	lĕv-iŏr,	lĕv-issĭmŭs.
fēlix,	fēlīc,	*fortunate,*	fēlīc-iŏr,	fēlīc-issĭmŭs.
prūdens,	prūdent,	*prudent,*	prūdent-iŏr,	prūdent-issĭmŭs.

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Termi-
nations, having ior in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and
Feminine, and ius in that of the Neuter. It is declined as
follows :

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Altiŏr	altiŭs	Altiŏr-ēs	altiŏr-ă
Gen.	Altiŏr-ĭs	—	Altiŏr-um	
Dat.	Altiŏr-ī	—	Altiŏr-ĭbŭs	
Acc.	Altiŏr-em	altiŭs	Altiŏr-ēs	—
Voc.	Altiŏr	altiŭs	Altiŏr-ēs	altiŏr-ă
Abl.	Altiŏr-ĕ *rarely* -ī	—	Altiŏr-ĭbŭs	altiŏr-ă

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Termi-
nations, us, a, um: as, altissĭmŭs, altissĭmă, altissĭmum.

§ 65. EXCEPTIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rĭmŭs* :
as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
pulchĕr,	*beautiful,*	pulchr-iŏr,	pulcher-rĭmŭs.
lībĕr,	*free,*	lībĕr-iŏr,	liber-rĭmŭs.
ācĕr,	*sharp,*	ācr-iŏr,	ācer-rĭmŭs.
cĕlĕr,	*swift,*	cĕlĕr-iŏr,	cĕler-rĭmŭs.

Also vĕtŭs (*Gen.* vĕtĕr-is), *old,* has a Superlative, vĕter-rĭmŭs.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ĭlis* form their
Superlative in *lĭmus* : as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
făcĭlĭs,	*easy,*	făcĭl-iŏr,	făcil-lĭmŭs.
diffĭcĭlĭs,	*difficult,*	diffĭcĭl-iŏr,	diffĭcil-lĭmŭs.
sĭmĭlĭs,	*like,*	sĭmĭl-iŏr,	sĭmil-lĭmŭs.
dissĭmĭlĭs,	*unlike,*	dissĭmĭl-iŏr,	dissĭmil-lĭmŭs.
grăcĭlĭs,	*thin,*	grăcĭl-iŏr,	grăcil-lĭmŭs.
hŭmĭlĭs,	*low,*	hŭmĭl-iŏr,	hŭmil-lĭmŭs.

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is
owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l.*

III. Adjectives ending in -dĭcŭs, -fĭcŭs, and -vŏlŭs (de-
rived from the verbs dīco, făcĭo, and vŏlo) form their
Comparatives in *entiŏr*, and their Superlatives in *entissĭ-
mŭs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*) : as,

SM. L. G.

C

(left margin, partly cut off)

are declined
s, fēlix, *fortu-*

N.
fēlīc-iă
—
—
fēlīc-iă
fēlīc-iă
-

N.
prūdent-iă
—
—
prūdent-iă
prūdent-iă
—

powerful.
huge.
diligent.
wise.
present.

ur. in *tum*, see

dĭs, dītĕ; *Gen.*

rthless; frūgī,
hŏmŏ, frūgī

TIVES.

re usually
e Degrees :

e.
ghest.

r, and the
al vowel

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
mălĕdĭcŭs,	*slanderous,*	mălĕdĭcentiŏr,	mălĕdĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕfĭcŭs,	*beneficent,*	bĕnĕfĭcentiŏr,	bĕnĕfĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕvŏlŭs,	*benevolent,*	bĕnĕvŏlentiŏr,	bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmŭs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb măgĭs, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb maxĭmē, *most*: as, noxiŭs, *hurtful*, măgĭs noxiŭs, *more hurtful*, maxĭmē noxiŭs, *most hurtful*.

---

§ 66. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
bŏnŭs,	*good,*	mĕliŏr,	optĭmŭs
mălŭs,	*bad,*	pējŏr,	pessĭmŭs
magnŭs,	*great,*	mājŏr,	maxĭmŭs
parvŭs,	*small,*	mĭnŏr,	mĭnĭmŭs
multŭs,	*much,*	plūs (*pl.* plūres, plūra),	plūrĭmŭs
nēquam,	*worthless,*	nēquĭŏr,	nēquissĭmŭs
frūgi (*indecl.*)	*frugal,*	frūgālior,	frūgālissĭmŭs.

Obs. 1. Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*		*Sup.*	
jŭvĕnĭs,	*young,*	jūniŏr,		(mĭnĭmus natu)	
sĕnex,	*old,*	sĕniŏr,		(maxĭmus natu)	
—		dĕtĕriŏr,	*worse,*	dĕterrĭmŭs	
—		ōciŏr,	*swifter,*	ōcissĭmŭs	
—		priŏr,	*former,*	prīmus,	*first*
nŏvŭs,	*new,*			nŏvissĭmŭs.	

Obs. 2. Some Comparatives and Superlatives, expressing relations of time and place, either have no Positive (the corresponding Preposition taking its place), or the Positive has a different meaning: as,

Posit.	*Comp.*		*Sup.*	
(citrā, *on this side*),	cĭtĕriŏr,	*more on this side,*	cĭtĭmŭs,	*most on this side.*
(ultrā, *on the farther side*),	ultĕriŏr,	*farther,*	ultĭmŭs,	*farthest.*
(extrā, *on the outside, with-*	extĕriŏr,	*outer,*	extrēmŭs,	*outermost.*
(infrā, *below*), [*out*]	infĕriŏr,	*lower,*	infĭmŭs (ĭmus),	*lowest.*
(intrā, *within*),	intĕriŏr,	*inner,*	intĭmŭs, or ĭmŭs,	*innermost.*
(prŏpĕ, *near*),	prŏpiŏr,	*nearer,*	proxĭmŭs,	*nearest.*
(post, *after*),	postĕriŏr,	*later,*	postrēmŭs,	*last.*
(suprā, *above*),	sŭpĕriŏr,	*upper,*	suprēmŭs, or summus,	*uppermost.*

Note.—Infĕrus is used only in Infĕrum Mărĕ, *the Lower Sea,* i. e. the sea south and west of Italy, and in the Plural Infĕrĭ, ae, ă, *belonging to the lower world.* Sŭpĕrŭs is used only in Sŭpĕrum Mărĕ, *the Upper Sea,* i. e. the Adriatic, and in the Plural Sŭpĕrĭ, ae, ă, *belonging to the upper world.*

Sup.
ĕdīcentissĭmŭs.
ĕfīcentissĭmŭs.
ĕvŏlentissĭmŭs.

he termination
g the Adverb
g the Adverb
ŭs, *more hurt-*

as,

Sup.
optĭmŭs
pessĭmŭs
maxĭmŭs
mĭnĭmŭs
plūrĭmŭs
nēquissĭmŭs
frūgālissĭmŭs.

are wanting: as,

Sup.
nus natu)
nus natu)
ĭmŭs
ŭs
s, *first*
ĭmŭs.

tions of time a
sition taking its

up.
ost *on this side.*
arthest.
*oc*utermost.
ŭs), *lowest.*
ĭmŭs, *innermost.*
earest.
last.
r summus, *up-*

ower Sea, i. e.
d Infĕrī, ae, ŭ,
y in Sŭpĕrum
Plural Sŭpĕrī,

CHAPTER XII.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 67. *Cardinal Numerals* denote numbers simply or absolutely: as, ūnŭs, *one;* duo, *two;* trēs, *three.*

§ 68. Ūnus, ūna, ūnum, is declined like ullus.   See § 57.

> *Obs. Unus* is used in the Plural with Plural Substantives which have a singular meaning: as, ūnă castră, *one camp;* ūnae aedēs, *one house.*

Duo and **Trēs** are declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	duo	Trēs	trĭă
Gen.	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trĭum	—
Dat.	Du-ōbŭs	du-ābŭs	du-ōbŭs	Trĭbŭs	—
Acc.	Du-ōs	du-ăs	du-o	Trēs *or* trīs	trĭă
Abl.	Du-ōbŭs	du-ābŭs	du-ōbŭs	Trĭbŭs	—

> *Obs.* Ambo, *both,* is declined like duo.

§ 69. The Cardinal Numerals from quattuŏr, *four,* to centum, *a hundred,* are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred,* and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Millĕ, *a thousand,* is an indeclinable Adjective; but in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive: as, *Nom.* millĭă, *Gen.* millium, *Dat.* millĭbŭs, *Acc.* millĭă, *Abl.* millĭbŭs.

> *Obs.* 1. In the Plural millĭă is regularly followed by the Genitive: as, trĭă millĭă hŏmĭnum, *three thousand men.* But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used: as, trĭă millĭă trĕcentī hŏmĭnēs, *three thousand three hundred men.*
>
> *Obs.* 2. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without ĕt, or by the smaller numeral first with ĕt: as, vīgintī ūnŭs, or ūnŭs et vīgintī, *twenty-one.* The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first: as, centum ĕt sexāgintā sex, or centum sexāgintā sex, *one hundred and sixty-six.*
>
> *Obs.* 3. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, &c., have the smaller numeral first with the preposition dē to indicate subtraction: as, duodēvīgintī, ūndēvīgintī, &c.

§ 70. *Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; and hence they have a relative signification: as, prīmŭs, *first;* sĕcundŭs or altĕr, *second.* They are declined regularly as adjectives; see § 56.

> *Obs.* Dates of years are expressed by annŭs with the ordinal numeral: as, annŭs millēsĭmŭs octingentēsĭmŭs sexāgēsĭmŭs prīmŭs, *the year 1861.*

§ 71. *Distributive Numerals* denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit; and these Latin numerals may be translated in various ways: as, bīnī, *two each, two together, two by two.*

§ 72. *Numeral Adverbs* denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: as, sĕmĕl, *once;* bĭs, *twice;* tĕr, *three times.*

§ 73. NUMERALS.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus	sĭngŭli	sĕmĕl.
2	II	duo	sĕcundus or alter	bīni	bĭs.
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni or trini	tĕr.
4	IV	quattuŏr, quātuor	quartus	quăterni	quăter.
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus	quīni	quinquiēs.
6	VI	sex	sextus	sēni	sexiēs.
7	VII	septem	septĭmus	septēni	septiēs.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octōni	octiēs.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus	nŏvēni	nŏviēs.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus	dēni	dĕciēs.
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus	undēni	undĕciēs.
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus	duŏdēni	duŏdĕciēs.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertius dĕcĭmus	terni dēni	terdĕciēs or trĕdĕciēs.
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus	quăterni dēni	quattuordĕciēs.
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus	quini dēni	quindĕciēs.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus	sēni dēni	sēdĕciēs.
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus	septēni dēni	septiesdĕciēs.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīginti	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus	duŏdēvīceni	duŏdēvīciēs.
19	XIX	undēvīginti	undēvīcēsĭmus	undēvīceni	undēvīciēs.
20	XX	vīginti	vīcēsĭmus	vīceni	vīciēs.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīginti or vīginti ūnus	primus et vīcēsĭmus, or vīcēsĭmus primus	vīceni singŭli	sĕmĕl et vīciēs.
22	XXII	duo et vīginti or vīginti duo	alter et vīcēsĭmus, or vīcēsĭmus alter	vīceni bini	bĭs et vīciēs.

20	XX	vīgintī	undēvīcēsimus vīcēsimus	undēvīcēni vīcēni	undēvīciēs. undēvīciēs. vīciēs.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī or vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsimus, or vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēni singŭli	sēmel et vīciēs.
22	XXII	duo et vīgintī or vīgintī duo	alter et vīcēsimus, or vīcēsimus alter	vīcēni bīni	bis et vīciēs.

Main table:

23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī or vīgintī trēs	tertius et vīcēsimus, or vīcēsimus tertius	vīcēni ternī	tĕr et vīciēs.
28	XXVIII	ᴅᴜᴏdētrīgintā	ᴅᴜᴏdētrīgēsimus	ᴅᴜᴏdētrīcēni	ᴅᴜᴏdētrīciēs.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsimus	undētrīcēni	undētrīciēs.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsimus	trīcēni	trīciēs.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēni	quadrāgiēs.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus	quinquāgēni	quinquāgiēs.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēni	sexāgiēs.
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēni	septuāgiēs.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēni	octōgiēs.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēni	nōnāgiēs.
100	C	centum	centēsimus	centēni	centiēs.
200	CC	dūcentī	dūcentēsimus	dūcēni	dūcentiēs.
300	CCC	trēcentī	trēcentēsimus	trēcēni	trēcentiēs.
400	CCCC	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēni	quadringentiēs.
500	D or I)	quingentī	quingentēsimus	quingēni	quingentiēs.
600	DC	sexcentī	sexcentēsimus	sexcēni	sexcentiēs.
700	DCC	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēni	septingentiēs.
800	DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēni	octingentiēs.
900	DCCCC	nongentī	nongentēsimus	nongēni	nongentiēs.
1000	M or CI)	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singŭla mīllia	mīlliēs.
2000	MM	duŏ mīllia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīllia	bis mīlliēs.
5000	CCI)	quinquĕ mīllia	quinquiēs mīllēsimus	quīna mīllia	quinquiēs mīlliēs.
10,000	CCI))	dĕcem mīllia	dĕciēs mīllēsimus	dēna mīllia	dēciēs mīlliēs.
50,000	I))	quinquāgintā mīllia	quinquāgiēs mīllēsimus	quinquāgēna mīllia	quinquāgiēs mīlliēs.
100,000	CCCI))	centum mīllia	centiēs mīllēsimus	centēna mīllia	centiēs mīlliēs.
500,000	I)))	quingentā mīllia	quingentiēs mīllēsimus	quingēna mīllia	quingentiēs mīlliēs.
1 000,000	CCCCI)))	dēciēs centum mīllia	dēciēs centiēs mīllēsimus	dēciēs centēna mīllia	dēciēs centiēs mīlliēs.

Chapter XIII.—The Pronouns.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are:

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

§ 75. 1. Personal Pronouns.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

		Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Ĕgŏ,	I	Nŏs,	we
Gen.	Meī,	of me	Nostrī *and* nostrum,	of us
Dat.	Mĭhi,	to or *for* me	Nŏbīs,	to or *for us*
Acc.	Mĕ,	me	Nŏs,	us [*from us.*
Abl.	Mĕ,	by, *with,* or *from* me.	Nŏbīs,	by, with, or

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

		Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Tū,	thou	Vŏs,	ye
Gen.	Tuī,	of thee	Vestrī *and* vestrum,	of you
Dat.	Tĭbi,	to or *for thee*	Vŏbīs,	to or *for you*
Acc.	Tĕ,	thee	Vŏs,	you
Voc.	Tū,	O thou	Vŏs,	O ye [*you.*
Abl.	Tĕ,	by, *with,* or *from* thee.	Vŏbīs,	by, *with,* or *from*

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mĕt* or *tĕ*; as, ĕgŏmĕt, *I myself;* tūtĕ, tūtĕmet, *thou thyself;* nosmet, vosmet, *we ourselves, you yourselves.*

Obs. 2. The *Dat.* mĭhi is sometimes contracted into mī.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it*, the Determinative Pronoun ĭs, eă, ĭd is usually employed. See § 79.

§ 76. II. Reflective Pronouns.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case.

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns; but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined:

Sing. and Plur.

Nom. (wanting)
Gen. Suī,   *of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Dat. Sĭbi,   *to* or *for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Acc. Sĕ or sĕsĕ,   *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Abl. Sĕ or sĕsĕ,   *by himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

Obs. Sĭbi and sē are strengthened by the addition of *mĕt:* as, sĭbimĕt, sēmĕt.

§ 77. III. Possessive Pronouns.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly:

M.	F.	N.	
Meŭs,	meă,	meum,	*my* or *mine.*
Tuŭs,	tuă,	tuum,	*thy* or *thine.*
Nostĕr,	nostră,	nostrum,	*our.*
Vestĕr,	vestră,	vestrum,	*your.*
Suŭs,	suă,	suum,	*his, her, its, their.*

Obs. 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of meŭs is mī.

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptĕ:* as, meoptĕ ingĕniŏ, *by my own ability.* Mĕt is added to suŭs: as, suămĕt scĕlĕră, *his own crimes.*

Obs. 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative: as, cūjŭs, cūjă, cūjum, *whose?*

Obs. 4. From nostĕr, vestĕr, cūjŭs (ă, um) are formed Adjectives ending in ās (Gen. ātĭs), which signify *belonging to a country:* as,

     nostrās,   -ātĭs,   *of our country;*
     vestrās,   -ātĭs,   *of your country;*
     cūjās,   -ātĭs,   *of what country?*

§ 78. IV. Demonstrative Pronouns.

These are of the *First, Second,* and *Third* Persons: namely, hic, haec, hoc, *this near me;* istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that near you;* illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that near him,* or *that yonder.*

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this near me.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Hīc	haec	hoc		Hī	hae	haec
Gen.	Hūjŭs				Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huĭc				Hīs		
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc		Hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc		Hīs		

2. Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that near you.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.		Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Istĕ	istă	istŭd		Istī	istae	istă
Gen.	Istiŭs				Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	Istī				Istīs		
Acc.	Istum	istam	istŭd		Istōs	istās	istă
Abl.	Istō	istă	istō		Istīs		

3. Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that near him, that yonder.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.		Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Illĕ	illă	illŭd		Illī	illae	illă
Gen.	Illiŭs				Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī				Illīs		
Acc.	Illum	illam	illŭd		Illōs	illās	illă
Abl.	Illō	illă	illō		Illīs		

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle cĕ or c. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of hic, but may be added to others also : as, hūjuscĕ, hīcĕ, &c.

Istĕ with the particle *ce* or *c* is thus declined :

	Sing. M.	F.	N.		Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Istic	istaec	istuc		Istīcĕ	istaec	istaec
Gen.	Istiuscĕ				Istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.	Istī				Istiscĕ		
Acc.	Istunc	istanc	istuc		Istoscĕ	istascĕ	istaec
Abl.	Istōc	istāc	istōc		Istiscĕ		

Illĕ with the particle *ce* or *c* is declined in the same way : as,
illic　　illaec　　illuc, etc.

Obs. 2. Ecce or en, *behold,* are sometimes prefixed to ille and iste : as, eccillum or ellum ; eccistam ; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses ollī as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of illī. The stem was originally OL, which appears in ōl-im, *yonder.*

§ 79. V. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are: Ĭs, eă, ĭd, *this,* and *he, she, that,* referring to words in the context of a sentence ; its compound, ĭdem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same;* and ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.*

1. Is, eă, ĭd, *this,* and *he, she, it.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.		Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ĭs	eă	ĭd		Iī	eae	eă
Gen.	Ĕjŭs				Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Eī				Iīs *or* eīs		
Acc.	Eum	eam	ĭd		Eōs	eās	eă
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō		Iīs *or* eīs		

2. Idem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.		Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ĭdem	eădem	ĭdem		Iīdem	eaedem	eădem
Gen.	Ĕjusdem				Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eīdem				Iīsdem *or* eīsdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	ĭdem		Ecsdem	easdem	eădem
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	oōdem		Iīsdem *or* eīsdem		

3. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum	Ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
Gen.	Ipsīŭs			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī			Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsŏ	Ipsīs		

Obs. 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to is : as, ecca, eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas. See § 78, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Ipse compounded with some cases of is sometimes loses the *i :* as, eumpse, eampse, copse, eapse ; also rĕapse = rē ipsā or rē eā ipsā.

§ 80. VI. Relative Pronouns.

Quī, quae, quŏd, *who* or *which.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quŏd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjŭs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī *or* cŭī			Quĭbŭs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quŏd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quĭbŭs		

Obs. 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* quōiŭs, in the *Dat. Sing.* quoi, in the *Abl. Sing.* quī (instead of quō), and in the *Dat.* and *Abl. Pl.*, quīs (instead of quĭbŭs). The *Abl.* quī is usually found in combination with the preposition cum : as, quīcum instead of quōcum.

Obs. 2. From qui are formed the two indefinite relatives quīcunquĕ and quisquīs, *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever.*

Quīcunquĕ, quaecunquĕ, quodcunquĕ is declined like quī, quae, quŏd, with the addition of the indeclinable cunque : as, *Gen.* cūjuscunquĕ, &c.

Besides quisquīs, the Neut. quidquĭd (or quicquĭd) and *Abl.* quōquō are the only forms in use.

Quīcunquĕ is generally an Adjective ; quisquīs always a Substantive.

Obs. 3. The interrogative ŭtĕr, utră, utrum, *which of the two?* is used as a relative with cunquĕ ; as, ŭtercunquĕ, utrăcunquĕ, utrumcunquĕ, *whichever of the two.*

§ 81. VII. Interrogative Pronouns.

Quĭs or quī, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *who, which? what?*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quĭs *or* quī	quae	quĭd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjŭs		[or quŏd	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī		[or quŏd	Quĭbŭs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quĭd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quĭbŭs		

Obs. 1. Quĭs is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective ; quĭd only as a Substantive ; quī and quŏd as Adjectives : as, quĭd commīsĭt, *what has he done?* quŏd făcĭnŭs commīsĭt, *what deed has he done?*

c 3

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* quī is used only in the signification *how ?* as, quī fĭt ! *how does it happen ?*

Obs. 3. Quĭs and quī are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations : as, quisnam or quīnam, quacnam, quidnam or quodnam, *who then, what then ?*

Obs. 4. When the question refers to one of two, ŭtĕr, utrǎ, utrum, *which of the two,* is used. For the declension of ŭter and its compounds see § 57, Obs. 2.

Obs. 5. Some derivatives of quis are also capable of being used interrogatively; as, quantus, *how great?* quālis, *of what sort ?* quŏt, *how many ?* See § 83.

§ 82. VIII. Indefinite Pronouns.

Quis is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions si, *if,* and nē, *lest.* Thus, si quis is "*if any one*"; nē quis, "*lest any one,*" "*that no one.*"

When quis is so used, it changes *quae* to qua wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative quis.

Obs. 1. Quĭd is used as a Substantive, quŏd as an Adjective : quĭs both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, quī usually as an Adjective.

Obs. 2. Ecquĭs (ecquī), ecquǎ (ecquae), ecquĭd (ecquŏd), *any,* and, strengthened with the particle nam, ecquisnam, is formed from quis, and declined in the same manner.

Obs. 3. Alĭquĭs, ălĭquĭd, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and ălĭquī, ălĭquǎ, ălĭquŏd, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like quĭs (quī), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form ălĭquǎ is used.

Obs. 4. Quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), *any one,* has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen.* cūjusquam, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is ullŭs.

Obs. 5. The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative ; the Neuters in quid being used Substantively, and those in quŏd Adjectively :—

Quĭdam,	quaedam,	quoddam or quĭddam,	*a certain one.*
Quispiam,	quaepiam,	quodpiam or quidpiam,	*any one.*
Quĭvĭs,	quaevĭs,	quodvĭs or quidvĭs,	*any one you please.*
Quīlĭbĕt,	quaelĭbĕt,	quodlĭbĕt or quidlĭbĕt,	*any one you please.*
Quisquĕ,	quaequĕ,	quodquĕ or quidquĕ,	*every one.*
Ūnusquisquĕ,	ūnăquaequĕ,	ūnumquodquĕ or ūnumquidquĕ,	*Gen.*
ūnīuscujusquĕ,	&c., *each one.*		

Obs. 6. The following form the *Gen.* in *īŭs* and the *Dat.* in *ī* : ullus, *any ;* nullus, *none ;* nonnullus (usu. in *pl.*) *some ;* ălius, *one, another ;* alter, *the one* or *other of two ;* neuter, (a contraction of ne uter), *neither of two.* See § 57. In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *i, ae,* and the *Dat.* in *o, ae :* as nulli consilii, nullo consilio, &c. The compound alterŭter is declined either in both words : as, *Gen.* altĕrīus utrīus : or only in the latter : as, *Dat.* alterutrō.

§ 83. IX. Correlative Pronouns.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
Tālĭs, *of such a kind.*	Quālĭs, *of such a kind as* (rel.); *of what kind ?* (interr.)	Quāliscunquĕ, Quālisquālis, *of what kind soever.*	Quālislĭbĕt, *of any kind you please.*
Tantŭs, *so great.*	Quantŭs, *so great as* (rel.); *how great ?* (interr.)	Quantuscunquĕ, Quantusquantus, *how great soever.*	Ălĭquantŭs, *of a certain, considerable size.* Quantuslĭbĕt, Quantusvĭs, *of any size you please.*
Tŏt (indecl.), *so many.* Tŏtĭdem (indecl.), *just so many.*	Quŏt (indecl.), *so many as* (rel.); *how many ?* (interr.)	Quotcunquĕ, Quotquŏt, *how many soever.*	Ălĭquŏt (indecl.), *some number.* Quotlĭbĕt (indecl.) *any number you please.*

Chapter XIV.—The Verb.

§ 84. Verbs are of two kinds:

1. Transitive Verbs, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action: as, ămo puĕrum, *I love the boy.*

2. Intransitive Verbs, which do not govern an Accusative Case: as, sĕdĕo, *I sit ;* curro, *I run.*

Transitive Verbs have Two Voices :

(i.) The Active Voice, before which the Nominative represents the *actor* (from ăgo, actum, *to do*): as, pătĕr ămăt, *the father loves.*

(ii.) The Passive Voice, (from pătĭŏr, passŭs, *to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the *object* of the action : as, pătĕr ămātur, *the father is loved.*

Obs. 1. Some Verbs may have a *reflective* sense in the Passive Voice : as, armŏr, *I arm myself ;* vertŏr, *I turn myself ;* lăvŏr, *I wash myself.*

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal : as, currĭtŭr, *it is run* (*they run*).

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective : as, hortŏr mīlĭtēs, *I exhort the soldiers* ; mīlĕs mŏrĭtur, *the soldier is dying* ; glōriŏr, *I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four Moods (Mŏdī) :

    I. The Indicative Mood declares a thing positively or unconditionally : as, ămo, *I love* ; scrībĭt, *he writes.*

    II. The Subjunctive Mood is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent : as, scrībo ut lĕgăt, *I write that he may read* ; lĕgăt ălĭquĭs, *let some one read.*

    Obs. The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative ; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.

    III. The Imperative Mood commands or entreats : as, ămā, *love* ; nĕ occīdĭto, *thou shalt not kill.*

    IV. The Infinitive Mood expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person or time : as, ămārĕ, *to love.*

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

    1. The Participle, which is a Verbal Adjective. There are four Participles :

Active.

Imperfect.	Ămans,	*loving.*
Future.	Ămātūrus,	*about to love.*

Passive.

Perfect.	Ămātus,	*loved.*
Gerundive.	Ămandus,	*fit to be loved.*

    2. The Supine, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative : as,

Ămātum,	*to love.*
Ămātū,	*in loving, to be loved.*

    3. The Gerund, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases : as,

Gen.	Ămandī,	*of loving*
Dat.	Ămando,	*for loving*
Acc.	Ămandum,	*a loving*
Abl.	Ămando,	*by loving.*

Obs. The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

ut an Active
cause they lay
either Transi-
ailītēs, *I exhort
g ;* glōriŏr, *I*

positively or
ĭbĭt, *he writes.*
to another
, relative, or
ite *that he may*

translated as an
rb.

entreats : as,
ll.

tion denoted
son or time :

orms are de-
Verbs.
Adjective.

ubstantive
s only, the

bstantive,

by the Infini-

§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Tempŏră) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

Imperfect Tenses.

1.	*Present.* Ămo,	*I love* or *I am loving.*
2.	*Past.* Ămābam,	*I was loving.*
3.	*Future.* Ămābo,	*I shall love.*

Obs. The *Present* and *Future* Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the Future Tense is never Imperfect : ămābo never signifies *I shall be loving.* Hence it is better to call these two tenses *Present* and *Future* simply.

Perfect Tenses.

1.	*Present.* Ămāvī,	*I have loved.*
2.	*Past.* Ămāvĕram,	*I had loved.*
3.	*Future.* Ămāvĕro,	*I shall have loved.*

Obs. The *Present-Perfect* has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past : thus, Ămāvī signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved;* and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist.* As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

	Sing.		Plur.	
1. Ămo,	*I love*	Ămāmŭs,	*We love*
2. Ămās,	*thou lovest*	Ămātĭs,	*ye love*
3. Ămăt,	*he loves.*	Ămant,	*they love.*

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the ending of the Imperfect Infinitive Active ; which in,

I. The First Conjugation ends in āre : as, ămāre, *to love.*

II. The Second　　,,　　,,　　ēre : {as, mŏnēre, *to advise.*

III. The Third　　,,　　,,　　ĕre : as, rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*

IV. The Fourth　　,,　　,,　　īre : as, audīre, *to hear.*

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb ; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

Chapter XV.—The Verb Sum and the Four Conjugations.

§ 90. The Verb sum, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

Sum, fŭī, fŭtūrŭs, essĕ,—*to be*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Sum,	*I am*	*Plur.* Sŭmŭs,	*We are*
Ĕs,	*thou art*	Estĭs,	*ye are*
Est,	*he is.*	Sunt,	*they are.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

Sing. Ĕram,	*I was*	*Plur.* Ĕrămŭs,	*We were*
Ĕrās,	*thou wast*	Ĕrātĭs,	*ye were*
Ĕrăt,	*he was.*	Ĕrant,	*they were.*

3. Future Tense.

Sing. Ĕro,	*I shall be*	*Plur.* Ĕrĭmŭs,	*We shall be*
Ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt be*	Ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will be*
Ĕrĭt,	*he will be.*	Ĕrunt,	*they will be.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing. Fuī,	*I have been, or I was*	*Plur.* Fuĭmŭs,	*We have been, or we were*
Fuistī,	*thou hast been, or thou wast*	Fuistĭs,	*ye have been, or ye were*
Fuĭt,	*he has been, or he was.*	Fuĕrunt or fuĕrĕ }	*they have been, or they were.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

Sing. Fuĕram,	*I had been*	*Plur.* Fuĕrămŭs,	*We had been*
Fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been*	Fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been*
Fuĕrăt,	*he had been.*	Fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing. Fuĕro,	*I shall have been*	*Plur.* Fuĕrĭmŭs,	*We shall have been*
Fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been*	Fuĕritĭs,	*ye will have been*
Fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been.*	Fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Ĕs,	*Be thou.*	*Plur.* Estĕ,	*Be ye*

2. Future Tense.

Sing. Esto,	*Thou shalt be*	*Plur.* Estōtĕ,	*Ye shall be*
Esto,	*he shall be, or let him be.*	Sunto,	*they shall be, or let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Sim,	*I may be*		**Sīmŭs,**	*We may be*	
Sīs,	*thou mayst be*		**Sītĭs,**	*ye may be*	
Sĭt,	*he may be.*		**Sint,**	*they may be.*	

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Essem or **fŏrem,**	} *I might be*		**Essēmŭs** or **fŏrēmŭs,**	} *We might be*	
Essēs or **fŏrēs,**	} *thou mightst be*		**Essētĭs** or **fŏrētĭs,**	} *ye might be*	
Essĕt or **fŏrĕt,**	} *he might be.*		**Essent** or **fŏrent,**	} *they might be.*	

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.			P.		
Fŭtūrŭs sim,	*I*	*may*	**Fŭtūrī sīmŭs,**	*We*	*may*
Fŭtūrŭs sīs,	*thou*	*mayst* be about to be.	**Fŭtūrī sītĭs,**	*ye*	*may* be about to be.
Fŭtūrŭs sĭt,	*he*	*may*	**Fŭtūrī sint,**	*they*	*may*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Fŭĕrim,	*I may have been*		**Fŭĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been*	
Fŭĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been*		**Fŭĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been*	
Fŭĕrĭt,	*he may have been.*		**Fŭĕrint,**	*they may have been.*	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Fuissem,	*I might*	have been.	**Fuissēmŭs,**	*We might*	have been.
Fuissēs,	*thou mightst*		**Fuissētĭs,**	*ye might*	
Fuissĕt,	*he might*		**Fuissent,**	*they might*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	**Essĕ,**	*to be.*
PERFECT.	**Fuissĕ,**	*to have been.*
FUTURE.	**Fŭtūrum essĕ,** or **fŏrĕ,**	*to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.	**Fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um,**	*about to be.*

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards *'sum*, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds:

Absum,	*I am away.*		Obsum,	*I am in the way.*
Adsum,	*I am present.*		Praesum,	*I am before.*
Dēsum,	*I am wanting.*		Prōsum,	*I am serviceable.*
Insum,	*I am in.*		Subsum,	*I am under.*
Intersum,	*I am present at.*		Sŭpersum,	*I am surviving.*

Prōsum, however, takes *d* before *e* ; as,

Sing. Prōsum,	*Plur.* Prōsŭmŭs,	*Past-Imp.* Prōdĕram.
Prōdĕs,	Prōdestis,	*Future.* Prōdĕro.
Prōdest,	Prōsunt.	*Imp. Inf.* Prōdessĕ.

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of pŏtis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.

§ 91.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Amo, ămāvǐ, ămātum, ămārě,—to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	Am-o,	*I love*	*Plur.*	Am-āmŭs,	*We love*
	Ăm-ăs,	*thou lovest*		Ăm-ātĭs,	*ye love*
	Ăm-ăt,	*he loves.*		Ăm-ant,	*they love.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Am-ābam,	*I was loving*	*Plur.*	Am-ābāmŭs,	*We were loving*
	Ăm-ābās,	*thou wast loving*		Ăm-ābātĭs,	*ye were loving*
	Ăm-ābăt,	*he was loving.*		Ăm-ābant,	*they were loving.*

3. Future Tense.

Sing.	Am-ābo,	*I shall love*	*Plur.*	Am-ābĭmŭs,	*We shall love*
	Ăm-ābĭs,	*thou wilt love*		Ăm-ābĭtĭs,	*ye will love*
	Ăm-ābĭt,	*he will love.*		Ăm-ābunt,	*they will love.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Ăm-āvǐ,	*I have loved, or I loved*	*Plur.*	Am-āvǐmŭs,	*We have loved, or we loved*
	Ăm-āvistĭ,	*thou hast loved, or thou lovedst*		Am-āvistĭs,	*ye have loved, or ye loved*
	Ăm-āvĭt,	*he has loved, or he loved.*		Am-āvērunt, or ăm-āvērě	*they have loved, or they loved.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Am-āvěram,	*I had loved*	*Plur.*	Am-āvěrāmŭs,	*We had loved*
	Ăm-āvěrās,	*thou hadst loved*		Ăm-āvěrātĭs,	*ye had loved*
	Ăm-āvěrăt,	*he had loved.*		Ăm-āvěrant,	*they had loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Am-āvěro,	*I shall* } *have loved.*	*Plur.*	Am-āvěrimŭs,	*We shall* } *have loved.*
	Ăm-āvěrĭs,	*thou wilt* }		Ăm-āvěritĭs,	*ye will* }
	Ăm-āvěrĭt,	*he will* }		Ăm-āvěrint,	*they will* }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Am-ā,	*Love thou.*	*Plur.*	Am-ātě,	*Love ye.*

Future Tense.

Sing.	Am-āto,	*Thou shalt love*	*Plur.*	Am-ātōtě,	*Ye shall love*
	Am-āto,	*he shall love, or let him love.*		Ăm-anto,	*they shall love, or let them love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. Am-em,	*I may love*	P. Am-ēmŭs,	*We may love*
Am-ēs,	*thou mayst love*	Am-ētĭs,	*ye may love*
Am-ĕt,	*he may love.*	Am-ent,	*they may love.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Am-ārem,	*I might love*	P. Am-ārēmŭs,	*We might love*
Am-ārēs,	*thou mightst love*	Am-ārētĭs,	*ye might love*
Am-ārĕt,	*he might love.*	Am-ārent,	*they might love.*

3. Future Tense.

S. Am-ātūrŭs sim,	*I may*	} *be about to love.*	P. Am-ātūrī sīmŭs,	*We may*	} *be about to love.*
Am-ātūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst*		Am-ātūrī sītĭs,	*ye may*	
Am-ātūrŭs sīt,	*he may*		Am-ātūrī sint,	*they may*	

4. Perfect Tense.

S. Am-āvĕrim,	*I may*	} *have loved.*	P. Am-āvĕrimŭs,	*We may*	} *have loved.*
Am-āvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst*		Am-āvĕritĭs,	*ye may*	
Am-āvĕrĭt,	*he may*		Am-āvĕrint,	*they may*	

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-āvissem,	*I might*	} *have loved.*	P. Am-āvissēmŭs,	*We might*	} *have loved.*
Am-āvissēs,	*thou mightst*		Am-āvissētĭs,	*ye might*	
Am-āvissĕt,	*he might*		Am-āvissent,	*they might*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperf. Am-ārĕ,	*to love.*
Perfect. Am-āvissĕ,	{ *to have loved.*
Future. Am-ātūrum (am, um) essĕ,	{ *to be about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen. Am-andī,	*of loving*
Dat. Am-ando,	*for loving*
Acc. Am-andum,	*the loving*
Abl. Am-ando,	*by loving.*

SUPINES.

Am-ātum,	*to love.*	Am-ātū,	*to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf. Am-ans (ntĭs),	*loving.*
Future. Am-ātūrŭs (a, um),	*about to love.*

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r* : as,

ămāvistī becomes ămastī	ămāvĕram becomes ămāram
ămāvistĭs „ ămastĭs	ămāvĕro „ ămāro
ămāvērunt „ ămārunt :	ămāvĕrim „ ămārim
(but ămāvērē does not become	ămāvissem „ ămassem
ămārē, which would be con-	ămāvissĕ „ ămassĕ.
founded with the Imperf. Infin.).	

§ 92.—SECOND CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Mŏnĕo, mŏnŭĭ, mŏnĭtum, mŏnērĕ,—*to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. Mŏn-ĕo,	*I advise*	P. Mŏn-ēmŭs,	*We advise*
Mŏn-ēs,	*thou advisest*	Mŏn-ētĭs,	*ye advise*
Mŏn-ĕt,	*he advises.*	Mŏn-ent,	*they advise.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-ēbam,	*I was advising*	P. Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,	*We were advising*
Mŏn-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*	Mŏn-ēbātĭs,	*ye were advising*
Mŏn-ēbăt,	*he was advising.*	Mŏn-ēbaut,	*they were advising.*

3. Future Tense.

S. Mŏn-ēbo,	*I shall advise*	P. Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,	*We shall advise*
Mŏn-ēbĭs,	*thou wilt advise*	Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,	*ye will advise*
Mŏn-ēbĭt,	*he will advise.*	Mŏn-ēbunt,	*they will advise.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-uĭ,	*I have advised, or I advised*	P. Mŏn-uĭmŭs,	*We have advised. or we advised*
Mŏn-uistĭ,	*thou hast advised, or thou advisedst*	Mŏn-uistĭs,	*ye have advised, or ye advised*
Mŏn-uĭt,	*he has advised, or he advised.*	Mŏn-uērunt or -uĕrĕ, }	*they have advised, or they advised*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-uĕram,	*I had advised*	P. Mŏn-uĕrāmŭs,	*We had advised*
Mŏn-uĕrās,	*thou hadst advised*	Mŏn-uĕrātĭs,	*ye had advised*
Mŏn-uĕrăt,	*he had advised.*	Mŏn-uĕrant,	*they had advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-uĕro,	*I*	*shall* } *have advised.*	P. Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,	*We shall* } *have advised.*
Mŏn-uĕrĭs,	*thou*	*wilt*	Mŏn-uĕritĭs,	*ye will*
Mŏu-uĕrĭt,	*he*	*will*	Mŏn-uĕrint,	*they will*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Mŏn-ē,	*Advise thou.*	P. Mŏn-ētĕ,	*Advise ye.*

Future Tense.

S. Mŏn-ēto,	*Thou shalt advise*	P. Mŏn-ētōtĕ,	*Ye shall advise*
Mŏn-ēto,	*he shall advise, or let him advise.*	Mŏn-ento,	*they shall advise, or let them advise.*

CTIVE VOICE.

advise.

We advise
ye advise
they advise.

We were advising
ye were advising
they were advising.

We shall advise
ye will advise
they will advise.

We have advised,
or we advised
ye have advised,
or ye advised
they have advised,
or they advised

We had advised
ye had advised
they had advised

We shall have
e will advised.
ey will

vise ye.

hall advise
shall advise, or
et them advise.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Mŏn-eam,	I may advise	P.	Mŏn-eāmŭs,	We may advise
	Mŏn-eās,	thou mayst advise		Mŏn-eātĭs,	ye may advise
	Mŏn-eăt,	he may advise.		Mŏn-eant,	they may advise.

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	Mŏn-ērem,	I might advise	P.	Mŏn-ērēmŭs,	We might advise
	Mŏn-ērēs,	thou mightst advise		Mŏn-ērētĭs,	ye might advise
	Mŏn-ērĕt,	he might advise.		Mŏn-ērent.	they might advise.

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.	Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sim,	I may be about to advise	P.	Mŏn-ĭtūrĭ sīmŭs,	We may be about to advise
	Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sīs,	thou mayst be about to advise		Mŏn-ĭtūrĭ sītĭs,	ye may be about to advise
	Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs sĭt,	he may be about to advise.		Mŏn-ĭtūrĭ sint,	they may be about to advise.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Mŏn-uĕrim,	I may	have	P.	Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,	We may	have advised.
	Mŏn-uĕrĭs,	thou mayst	advised.		Mŏn-uĕritĭs,	ye may	
	Mŏn-uĕrĭt,	he may			Mŏn-uĕrĭnt.	they may	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Mŏn-uissem,	I might	have advised.	P.	Mŏn-uissēmŭs,	We might	have advised.
	Mŏn-uissēs,	thou mightst			Mŏn-uissētĭs,	ye might	
	Mŏn-uissĕt,	he might			Mŏn-uissent,	they might	

INFINITIVE MOOD.		GERUND.	
IMPERF. Mŏn-ērĕ,	to advise.	Gen. Mŏn-endĭ,	of advising
PERFECT. Mŏn-uissĕ,	to have advised.	Dat. Mŏn-endo,	for advising
FUTURE. Mŏn-ĭtūrum (am, um) essĕ,	to be about to advise.	Acc. Mŏn-endum,	the advising
		Abl. Mŏn-endo,	by advising.

SUPINES.

Mŏn-ĭtum,	to advise.	Mŏn-ĭtū.	to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Mŏn-ens (ntis),   advising.
FUTURE. Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs (a, um),   about to advise.

§ 93. THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rĕgo, rexĭ, rectum, rĕgĕrĕ,— *to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-o,	*I rule*		**Rĕg-ĭmŭs,**	*We rule*	
Rĕg-ĭs,	*thou rulest*		**Rĕg-ĭtĭs,**	*ye rule*	
Rĕg-ĭt,	*he rules.*		**Rĕg-unt,**	*they rule.*	

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ēbam,	*I was ruling*		**Rĕg-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were ruling*	
Rĕg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*		**Rĕg-ēbătĭs,**	*ye were ruling*	
Rĕg-ēbăt,	*he was ruling.*		**Rĕg-ēbant,**	*they were ruling.*	

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-am,	*I shall rule*		**Rĕg-ēmŭs,**	*We shall rule*	
Rĕg-ēs,	*thou will rule*		**Rĕg-ētĭs,**	*ye will rule*	
Rĕg-ĕt,	*he will rule.*		**Rĕg-ent,**	*they will rule.*	

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rex-ĭ,	*I have ruled, or I ruled*		**Rex-ĭmŭs,**	*We have ruled, or we ruled*	
Rex-istĭ,	*thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst*		**Rex-istĭs,**	*ye have ruled, or ye ruled*	
Rex-ĭt,	*he has ruled, or he ruled.*		**Rex-ērunt or -ērĕ,**	*they have ruled, or they ruled.*	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rex-ĕram,	*I had ruled*		**Rex-ĕrāmŭs,**	*We had ruled*	
Rex-ĕrās,	*thou hadst ruled*		**Rex-ĕrātĭs,**	*ye had ruled*	
Rex-ĕrăt,	*he had ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrant,**	*they had ruled.*	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rex-ĕro,	*I shall have ruled*		**Rex-ĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have ruled*	
Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have ruled*		**Rex-ĕritĭs,**	*ye will have ruled*	
Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he will have ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they will have ruled.*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-ĕ,	*Rule thou.*		**Rĕg-ĭtĕ,**	*Rule ye.*	

FUTURE TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-ĭto,	*Thou shalt rule*		**Rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,**	*Ye shall rule*	
Rĕg-ĭto,	*he shall rule, or let him rule.*		**Rĕg-unto,**	*they shall rule, or let them rule.*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-am,	I may rule		Rĕg-āmŭs,	We may rule.	
Rĕg-ās,	thou mayst rule		Rĕg-ātĭs,	ye may rule	
Rĕg-ăt,	he may rule.		Rĕg-ant,	they may rule.	

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-ĕrem,	I might rule		Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,	We might rule	
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	thou mightst rule		Rĕg-ĕrētĭs,	ye might rule	
Rĕg-ĕrĕt,	he might rule.		Rĕg-ĕrent,	they might rule.	

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rect-ūrŭs sim,	}	I may be about to rule	Rect-ūrī sīmŭs,	}	We may be about to rule
Rect-ūrŭs sīs,	}	thou mayst be about to rule	Rect-ūrī sītĭs,	}	ye may be about to rule
Rect-ūrŭs sĭt,	}	he may be about to rule.	Rect-ūrī sint,	}	they may be about to rule.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rex-ĕrim,	I may } have ruled.		Rex-ĕrimŭs,	We may } have ruled	
Rex-ĕrĭs,	thou mayst }		Rex-ĕritĭs,	ye may }	
Rex-ĕrĭt,	he may }		Rex-ĕrint,	they may }	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Rex-issem,	I might } have ruled.		Rex-issēmŭs,	We might } have ruled	
Rex-issēs,	thou mightst }		Rex-issētĭs,	ye might }	
Rex-issĕt,	he might }		Rex-issent,	they might }	

INFINITIVE MOOD.			GERUND.		
IMPERF.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	to rule.	Gen.	Rĕg-endī,	of ruling
PERFECT.	Rex-issĕ,	{ to have ruled.	Dat.	Rĕg-endo,	for ruling
FUTURE.	Rect-ūrum (am, um) essĕ,	{ to be about to rule.	Acc.	Rĕg-endum,	the ruling
			Abl.	Rĕg-endo,	by ruling.

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	to rule.		Rec-tū,	to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF.	Rĕg-ens (ntis),	ruling.
FUTURE.	Rec-tūrŭs (a, um),	about to rule.

§ 94. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Active Voice.

Audĭo, audīvī, audītum, audīrĕ,—*to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-io,	*I hear*		**Aud-īmŭs,**	*We hear*	
Aud-ĭs,	*thou hearest*		**Aud-ītĭs,**	*ye hear*	
Aud-ĭt,	*he hears.*		**Aud-iunt,**	*they hear.*	

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing*		**Aud-iēbāmŭs,**	*We were hearing*	
Aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing*		**Aud-iēbātĭs,**	*ye were hearing*	
Aud-iēbăt,	*he was hearing.*		**Aud-iēbant,**	*they were hearing.*	

3. Future Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-iam,	*I shall hear*		**Aud-iēmŭs,**	*We shall hear*	
Aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear*		**Aud-iētĭs,**	*ye will hear*	
Aud-iĕt,	*he will hear.*		**Aud-ient,**	*they will hear.*	

4. Perfect Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-īvī,	*I have heard, or I heard*		**Aud-īvĭmŭs,**	*We have heard, or we heard,*	
Aud-īvistī,	*thou hast heard, or thou heardst*		**Aud-īvistĭs,**	*ye have heard, or ye heard*	
Aud-īvĭt,	*he has heard, or he heard.*		**Aud-īvērunt** or **-īvērĕ,**	*they have heard, or they heard.*	

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-īvĕram,	*I had heard*		**Aud-īvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had heard*	
Aud-īvĕrās,	*thou hadst heard*		**Aud-īvĕrātĭs,**	*ye had heard*	
Aud-īvĕrăt,	*he had heard.*		**Aud-īvĕrant,**	*they had heard.*	

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-īvĕro,	*I shall* ⎫		**Aud-īvĕrimŭs,**	*We shall* ⎫	
Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt* ⎬ *have heard.*		**Aud-īvĕritĭs,**	*ye will* ⎬ *have heard.*	
Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he will* ⎭		**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they will* ⎭	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-ī,	*Hear thou.*		**Aud-ītĕ,**	*Hear ye.*	

Future Tense.

S.			P.		
Aud-īto,	*Thou shalt hear*		**Aud-ītōtĕ,**	*Ye shall hear*	
Aud-īto,	*he shall hear, or let him hear.*		**Aud-iunto,**	*they shall hear, or let them hear.*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Aud-iam,	I may hear		Aud-iāmŭs,	We may hear	
Aud-iās,	thou mayst hear		Aud-iātĭs,	ye may hear	
Aud-iăt,	he may hear.		Aud-iant,	they may hear.	

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.			P.		
Aud-īrem,	I might hear		Aud-īrēmŭs,	We might hear	
Aud-īrēs,	thou mightst hear		Aud-īrētĭs,	ye might hear	
Aud-īrĕt,	he might hear.		Aud-īrent,	they might hear.	

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S.			P.		
Aud-ītūrŭs sim,	I may be about to hear		Aud-ītūrī sīmŭs,	We may be about to hear	
Aud-ītūrŭs sīs,	thou mayst be about to hear		Aud-ītūrī sītĭs,	ye may be about to hear	
Aud-ītūrŭs sĭt,	he may be about to hear.		Aud-ītūrī sint,	they may be about to hear.	

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.				P.			
Aud-īvĕrim,	I may	} have heard.		Aud-īvĕrimŭs,	We may	} have heard.	
Aud-īvĕrĭs,	thou mayst			Aud-īvĕritĭs,	ye may		
Aud-īvĕrĭt,	he may			Aud-īvĕrint,	they may		

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.				P.			
Aud-īvissem,	I might	} have heard.		Aud-īvissēmŭs,	We might	} have heard.	
Aud-īvissēs,	thou mightst			Aud-īvissētĭs,	ye might		
Aud-īvissĕt,	he might			Aud-īvissent,	they might		

INFINITIVE MOOD.		GERUND.	
IMPERF. Aud-īrĕ,	to hear.	Gen. Aud-iendī,	of hearing
PERFECT. Aud-īvissĕ,	{ to have heard.	Dat. Aud-iendo,	for hearing
FUTURE. Aud-ītūrum (am, um) essĕ,	{ to be about to hear.	Acc. Aud-iendum,	the hearing
		Abl. Aud-iendo,	by hearing.

SUPINES.

Aud-ītum,	to hear.	Aud-ītū,	to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. **Aud-ĭens (ntis),** *hearing.*
FUTURE. **Aud-ītūrŭs (a, um),** *about to hear.*

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *i's* are often contracted into *i:* as,

audīvistī	becomes	audiistī or audistī	audīvĕrim	becomes	audiĕrim
audīvistĭs	„	audistĭs or audistĭs	audīvissem	„	{ audiissem or audissem
audīvĭt	„	audiĭt			
audīvērunt	„	audiĕrunt	audīvissĕ	„	{ audiissĕ or audissĕ
audīvĕram	„	audiĕram			
audīvĕro	„	audiĕro			

§ 95. FIRST CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

Amŏr: ămātŭs **sum** or **fuī,** ămārī,—*to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

| S. Am-ŏr, Am-āris or ăm-ārĕ, Am-ātŭr, | I am loved thou art loved he is loved. | P. Am-āmŭr, Am-āmĭnī, Am-antŭr, | We are loved ye are loved they are loved. |

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

| S. Am-ābăr, Am-ābāris or ăm-ābārĕ, Am-ābātŭr, | I was being loved thou wast being loved he was being loved. | P. Am-ābāmŭr, Am-ābāmĭnī, Am-ābantŭr, | We were being loved ye were being loved they were being loved. |

3. Future Tense.

| S. Am-ābŏr, Am-ābĕris or ăm-ābĕrĕ, Am-ābĭtŭr, | I shall be loved thou wilt be loved he will be loved. | P. Am-ābĭmŭr, Am-ābĭmĭnī, Am-ābuntŭr, | We shall be loved ye will be loved they will be loved. |

4. Perfect Tense.

S. Am-ātŭs sum or fuī	I have been loved, or was loved	P. Am-ātī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	We have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātŭs ĕs or fuistī,	thou hast been loved, or wast loved	Am-ātī estĭs or fuistĭs,	ye have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātŭs est or fuĭt,	he has been loved, or was loved.	Am-ātī sunt, fuĕrunt, or fuĕrĕ,	they have been loved, or were loved.

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-ātŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	I had been loved	P. Am-ātī ĕrāmŭs or fŭĕrāmŭs,	We had been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	thou hadst been loved	Am-ātī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	ye had been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrăt, or fuĕrăt,	he had been loved.	Am-ātī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	they had been loved.

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-ātŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	I shall have been loved	P. Am-ātī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	We shall have been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕris or fuĕrĭs,	thou wilt have been loved	Am-ātī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs,	ye will have been loved
Am-ātŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	he will have been loved.	Am-ātī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	they will have been loved.

VE VOICE.

e loved.

We are loved
ye are loved
they are loved.

{ We were being
 loved
{ ye were being
 loved
{ they were being
 loved.

We shall be loved
ye will be loved
they will be loved.

We have been
 loved, or were
 loved
e have been loved,
 or were loved
hey have been
 loved, or were
 loved.

We had been
 loved
e had been loved
ey had been
 loved.

e shall have
 been loved
 will have been
 loved
y will have
 been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ārĕ,	*Be thou loved.*	P. Ăm-ămĭnī,	*Be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ātŏr, Ăm-ātŏr,	*Thou shalt be loved he shall be loved, or let him be loved.*	P. Ăm-antor,	*They shall be loved, or let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ĕr, Ăm-ērĭs or ăm-ērĕ, Ăm-ētŭr,	*I may be loved thou mayst be loved he may be loved.*	P. Ăm-ēmŭr, Ăm-ēmĭnī, Ăm-entŭr,	*We may be loved ye may be loved they may be loved.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ārĕr, Ăm-ārērĭs or ăm-ārērĕ, Ăm-ārētŭr,	*I might be loved thou mightst be loved he might be loved.*	P. Ăm-ārēmŭr, Ăm-ārēmĭnī, Ăm-ārentŭr,	*We might be loved ye might be loved they might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ātŭs sim or fuĕrim, Ăm-ātŭs sīs or fuĕrĭs, Ăm-ātŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*I may have been loved thou mayst have been loved he may have been loved.*	P. Ăm-ātī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs, Ăm-ātī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs, Ăm-ātī sint or fuĕrint,	*We may have been loved ye may have been loved they may have been loved.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	Ăm-ātŭs essem or fuissem, Ăm-ātŭs essēs or fuissēs, Ăm-ātŭs essĕt or fuissĕt,	*I might have been loved thou mightst have been loved he might have been loved.*	P. Ăm-ātī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs, Ăm-ātī essētĭs or fuissētĭs, Ăm-ātī essent or fuissent,	*We might have been loved ye might have been loved they might have been loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Ăm-ārī,	*to be loved.*
PERFECT.	Ăm-ātum (am, um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	*to have been loved.*
FUTURE.	Ăm-ātum īrī,	*to be about to be loved.*

Obs. The form *ămātum* in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders. The word *īri* is the Imperfect Infinitive Passive of the Verb eo, *I go.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Ăm-ātŭs (a, um),	*loved or having been loved*
GERUNDIVE.	Ăm-andŭs (a, um),	*fit to be loved.*

SM. L. G.   D

§ 96. SECOND CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

Mŏnĕŏr, mŏnĭtŭs sum or fuī, mŏnērī.—*to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.			P.	
Mŏn-eŏr,	*I am advised*		Mŏn-ēmŭr,	*We are advised*
Mŏn-ērĭs or mŏn-ērĕ,	*thou art advised*		Mŏn-ēmĭnĭ,	*ye are advised*
Mŏn-ētŭr,	*he is advised.*		Mŏn-entŭr,	*they are advised.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.			P.	
Mŏn-ēbăr,	*I was being advised*		Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,	*We were being advised*
Mŏn-ēbārĭs or mŏn-ēbārĕ,	*thou wast being advised*		Mŏn-ēbāmĭnĭ,	*ye were being advised*
Mŏn-ēbātŭr,	*he was being advised.*		Mŏn-ēbantŭr,	*they were being advised.*

3. Future Tense.

S.			P.	
Mŏn-ēbŏr,	*I shall be advised*		Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,	*We shall be advised*
Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or Mŏn-ēbĕrĕ,	*thou wilt be advised*		Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnĭ,	*ye will be advised*
Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr,	*he will be advised.*		Mŏn-ēbuntŭr,	*they will be advised.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.			P.	
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sum or fuī,	*I have been advised, or was advised*		Mŏn-ĭtī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	*We have been advised, or were advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been advised, or wast advised*		Mŏn-ĭtī estĭs or fuistĭs,	*ye have been advised, or were advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been advised, or was advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,	*they have been advised, or were advised.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.			P.	
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	*I had been advised*		Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	*We had been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been advised*		Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	*they had been advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.			P.	
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	*I shall have been advised*		Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We shall have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been advised*		Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs,	*ye will have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	*they will have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ērĕ,**   *Be thou advised.* | P. **Mŏn-ēmĭnī,**   *Be ye advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ētŏr,** *Thou shalt be advised*   P. **Mŏn-entŏr,**   *They shall be ad-*
Mŏn-ētŏr, *he shall be advised, or*   *vised, or let them*
     let him be advised.   *be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-eăr,** { *I may be ad-*   P. **Mŏn-eāmŭr,** { *We may be*
      { *vised*   { *vised*
Mŏn-eārĭs or { *thou mayst be*   **Mŏn-eāmĭnī,** { *ye may be ad-*
  mŏn-eārĕ, { *advised*   { *vised*
Mŏn-eātŭr, { *he may be ad-*   **Mŏn-eantŭr,** { *they may be ad-*
      { *vised.*   { *vised.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ērĕr,** { *I might be ad-*   P. **Mŏn-ērēmŭr,** { *We might be ad-*
      { *vised*   { *vised*
Mŏn-ērērĭs or { *thou mightst be*   **Mŏn-ērēmĭnī,** { *ye might be ad-*
  mŏn-ērērĕ, { *advised*   { *vised*
Mŏn-ērētŭr, { *he might be ad-*   **Mŏn-ērentŭr,** { *they might be ad-*
      { *vised.*   { *vised.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs sim** { *I may have been*   P. **Mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs** { *We may have*
  or **fuĕrim,** { *advised*   or **fuĕrimŭs,** { *been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs { *thou mayst have*   **Mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs** { *ye may have been*
  or **fuĕrĭs,** { *been advised*   or **fuĕritĭs,** { *advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt { *he may have been*   **Mŏn-ĭtī sint** { *they may have*
  or **fuĕrĭt,** { *advised.*   or **fuĕrint,** { *been advised.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs essem** { *I might have been*   P. **Mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs** { *We might have*
  or **fuissem,** { *advised*   or **fuissēmŭs,** { *been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs { *thou mightst have*   **Mŏn-ĭtī essētĭs** { *ye might have*
  or **fuissēs,** { *been advised*   or **fuissētĭs,** { *been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt { *he might have*   **Mŏn-ĭtī essent** { *they might have*
  or **fuissĕt,** { *been advised.*   or **fuissent,** { *been advised*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. **Mŏn-ērī,**   *to be advised.*
PERFECT. **Mŏn-ĭtum (am, um), essĕ** or **fuissĕ,** *to have been advised.*
FUTURE. **Mŏn-ĭtum īrī,**   *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.   **Mŏn-ĭtŭs (a, um),**   *advised* or *having been advised.*
GERUNDIVE. **Mŏn-endŭs (a, um),**   *fit to be advised.*

§ 97. THIRD CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

Rĕgŏr, rectŭs sum or fuĭ, rĕgĭ,—*to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.			P.		
Rĕg-ŏr,	*I am ruled*		Rĕg-ĭmŭr,	*We are ruled*	
Rĕg-ĕrĭs or rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*thou art ruled*		Rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ,	*ye are ruled*	
Rĕg-ĭtŭr,	*he is ruled.*		Rĕg-untŭr,	*they are ruled.*	

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Rĕg-ēbăr,	*I was being ruled*	Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,	*We were being ruled*
Rĕg-ēbārĭs or rĕg-ēbărĕ,	*thou wast being ruled*	Rĕg-ēbāmĭnĭ,	*ye were being ruled*
Rĕg-ēbātŭr,	*he was being ruled.*	Rĕg-ēbantŭr,	*they were being ruled.*

3. Future Tense.

S.		P.	
Rĕg-ăr,	*I shall be ruled*	Rĕg-ēmŭr,	*We shall be ruled*
Rĕg-ērĭs or rĕg-ērĕ,	*thou wilt be ruled*	Rĕg-ēmĭnĭ,	*ye will be ruled*
Rĕg-ētŭr,	*he will be ruled.*	Rĕg-entŭr,	*they will be ruled.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Rec-tŭs sum or fuĭ,	*I have been ruled, or was ruled*	Rec-tĭ sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	*We have been ruled, or were ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕs or fuistĭ,	*thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled*	Rec-tĭ estĭs or fuistĭs,	*ye have been ruled, or were ruled*
Rectŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been ruled, or was ruled.*	Rec-tĭ sunt, fuĕrunt, or fuērĕ,	*they have been ruled, or were ruled.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Rec-tŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	*I had been ruled*	Rec-tĭ ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	*We had been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been ruled*	Rec-tĭ ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been ruled.*	Rec-tĭ ĕrant or fuĕrant,	*they had been ruled.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Rec-tŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	*I shall have been ruled*	Rec-tĭ ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrĭmŭs,	*We shall have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been ruled*	Rec-tĭ ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been ruled.*	Rec-tĭ ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	*they will have been ruled.*

VE VOICE.

led.

We are ruled

ye are ruled

they are ruled.

| We were being
| ruled
| ye were being
| ruled
| they were being
| ruled.

We shall be ruled

ye will be ruled

they will be ruled.

| We have been
| ruled, or were
| ruled
| e have been
| ruled, or were
| ruled
| hey have been
| ruled, or were
| ruled.

| Ve had been
| ruled
| e had been
| ruled
| ey had been
| ruled.

| Ve shall have
| been ruled
| will have been
| ruled
| y will have
| been ruled.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ĕrĕ,**	*Be thou ruled.*	P. **Rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ,**	*Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ĭtŏr,** **Rĕg-ĭtŏr,**	*Thou shalt be ruled he shall be ruled, or let him be ruled.*	P. **Rĕg-untŏr,**	*They shall be ruled, or let them be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ăr,** **Rĕg-ărĭs** or **rĕg-ārĕ,** **Rĕg-ātŭr,**	*I may be ruled thou mayst be ruled he may be ruled.*	P. **Rĕg-āmŭr,** **Rĕg-āmĭnĭ,** **Rĕg-antŭr,**	*We may be ruled ye may be ruled they may be ruled.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ĕrĕr,** **Rĕg-ĕrērĭs** or **rĕg-ĕrērĕ,** **Rĕg-ĕrētŭr,**	*I might be ruled thou mightst be ruled he might be ruled.*	P. **Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,** **Rĕg-ĕrēmĭnĭ,** **Rĕg-ĕrentŭr,**	*We might be ruled ye might be ruled they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Rec-tŭs sim** or **fuĕrim,** **Rec-tŭs sīs** or **fuĕrĭs,** **Rec-tŭs sĭt** or **fuĕrĭt,**	*I may have been ruled thou mayst have been ruled he may have been ruled.*	P. **Rec-tī sīmŭs** or **fuĕrimŭs,** **Rec-tī sītĭs** or **fuĕritĭs,** **Rec-tī sint** or **fuĕrint,**	*We may have been ruled ye may have been ruled they may have been ruled.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Rec-tŭs essem** or **fuissem,** **Rec-tŭs essēs** or **fuissēs,** **Rec-tŭs essĕt** or **fuissĕt,**	*I might have been ruled thou mightst have been ruled he might have been ruled.*	P. **Rec-tī essēmŭs** or **fuissēmŭs,** **Rec-tī essētĭs** or **fuissētĭs,** **Rec-tī essent** or **fuissent,**	*We might have been ruled ye might have been ruled they might have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	**Rĕg-ī,**	*to be ruled.*
PERFECT.	**Rec-tum (am, um) essĕ** or **fuissĕ,**	*to have been ruled.*
FUTURE.	**Rec-tum īrī,**	*to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**Rec-tŭs (a, um),**	*ruled* or *having been ruled*
GERUNDIVE.	**Rĕg-endŭs (a, um),**	*fit to be ruled.*

§ 98. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

Audĭŏr, audītŭs sum or fuī, audīrī, — *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.		P.	
Aud-ĭŏr,	*I am heard*	Aud-ĭmŭr,	*We are heard*
Aud-īrĭs or aud-īrĕ,	*thou art heard*	Aud-ĭmĭnī,	*ye are heard*
Aud-ītŭr,	*he is heard.*	Aud-ĭuntŭr,	*they are heard.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Aud-iēbăr,	*I was being heard*	Aud-iēbāmŭr,	*We were being heard*
Aud-iēbārĭs or aud-iēbārĕ,	*thou wast being heard*	Aud-iēbāmĭnī,	*ye were being heard*
Aud-iēbātŭr,	*he was being heard.*	Aud-iēbantŭr,	*they were being heard.*

3. Future Tense.

S.		P.	
Aud-iăr,	*I shall be heard*	Aud-iēmŭr,	*We shall be heard*
Aud-iērĭs or aud-iērĕ,	*thou wilt be heard*	Aud-iēmĭnī,	*ye will be heard*
Aud-iētŭr,	*he will be heard.*	Aud-ientŭr,	*they will be heard.*

4. Perfect T

S.		P.	
Aud-ītŭs sum or fuī,	*I have been heard, or was heard*	Aud-ītī sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs,	*We have been heard, or were heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕs or fuistī,	*thou hast been heard, or wast heard*	Aud-ītī estĭs or fuistĭs,	*ye have been heard, or were heard*
Aud-ītŭs est or fuĭt,	*he has been heard, or was heard.*	Aud-ītī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērĕ,	*they have been heard, or were heard.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Aud-ītŭs ĕram or fuĕram,	*I had been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs,	*We had been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs,	*ye had been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt,	*he had been heard.*	Aud-ītī ĕrant or fuĕrant,	*they had been heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.		P.	
Aud-ītŭs ĕro or fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs,	*We shall have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been heard*	Aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs,	*ye will have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been heard.*	Aud-ītī ĕrunt or fuĕrint,	*they will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Aud-īrĕ,**	*Be thou heard.*		*P.* **Aud-īmĭnī,**	*Be ye heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Aud-ītŏr,**	*Thou shalt be heard*		*P.* **Aud-iuntŏr.**	*They shall be heard,*
Aud-ītŏr,	*he shall be heard,* or			or *let them be*
	let him be heard.			*heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Aud-iăr,**	*I may be heard*		*P.* **Aud-iāmŭr,**	*We may be heard*
Aud-iārĭs or	*thou mayst be*		**Aud-iāmĭnī,**	*ye may be heard*
aud-iārĕ,	*heard*		**Aud-iantŭr,**	*they may be heard.*
Aud-iātŭr,	*he may be heard.*			

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-īrĕr,**	*I might be heard*		*P.* **Aud-īrēmŭr,**	*We might be heard*
Aud-īrērĭs or	*thou mightst be*		**Aud-īrēmĭnī,**	*ye might be heard*
aud-īrērĕ,	*heard*		**Aud-īrentŭr,**	*they might be heard.*
Aud-īrētŭr,	*he might be heard.*			

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-ītŭs sim**	*I may have been*		*P.* **Aud-ītī sīmŭs**	*We may have*
or **fuĕrim,**	*heard*		or **fuĕrimŭs,**	*been heard*
Aud-ītŭs sīs	*thou mayst have*		**Aud-ītī sītĭs**	*ye may have been*
or **fuĕrĭs,**	*been heard*		or **fuĕritĭs,**	*heard*
Aud-ītŭs sĭt	*he may have been*		**Aud-ītī sint**	*they may have*
or **fuĕrĭt,**	*heard.*		or **fuĕrint,**	*been heard.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-ītŭs essem**	*I might have been*		*P.* **Aud-ītī essēmŭs**	*We might have*
or **fuissem,**	*heard*		or **fuissēmŭs,**	*been heard*
Aud-ītŭs essēs	*thou mightst have*		**Aud-ītī essētĭs**	*ye might have*
or **fuissēs,**	*been heard*		or **fuissētĭs,**	*been heard*
Aud-ītŭs essĕt	*he might have*		**Aud-ītī essent**	*they might have*
or **fuissĕt,**	*been heard.*		or **fuissent,**	*been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	**Aud-īrī,**	*to be heard.*
PERFECT.	**Aud-ītum (am, um) essĕ** or **fuissĕ,**	*to have been heard.*
FUTURE.	**Aud-ītum īrī,**	*to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**Aud-ītŭs (a, um),**	*heard* or *having been heard*
GERUNDIVE.	**Aud-iendŭs (a, um),**	*fit to be heard.*

§ 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *ămo.* (See also § 149.)

accūso,	*I accuse.*	hŏnōro,	*I honour.*	opto,	*I wish.*
ăro,	*I plough.*	laudo,	*I praise.*	orno,	*I adorn.*
clāmo,	*I cry out.*	lībĕro,	*I set free.*	păro,	*I prepare.*
hăbĭto,	*I dwell.*	nōmĭno,	*I name.*	rŏgo,	*I ask.*

Examples for Conjugation like *mŏneo.* (See also § 150.)

adhĭbeo,	*I apply.*	hăbeo,	*I have.*	plăceo,	*I please.*
cŏhĭbeo,	*I restrain.*	mĕreo,	*I deserve.*	praebeo,	*I present.*
dēbeo,	*I owe.*	nŏceo,	*I injure.*	prŏhĭbeo,	*I prevent.*
exerceo,	*I exercise.*	păreo,	*I obey.*	terreo,	*I frighten.*

Examples for Conjugation like *rĕgo.* (See also §§ 157, sqq.)

cingo,	*I gird.*	dūco,	*I lead.*	plango,	*I beat.*	tĕgo,	*I cover.*
dīco,	*I say.*	jungo,	*I join.*	sūgo,	*I suck.*	tingo,	*I dye.*

Obs. Dīco, *speak,* dūco, *lead,* have dīc, dūc, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, *Obs.* (p. 69).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio.* (See also § 168.)

custōdio,	*I guard.*	fīnio,	*I end.*	mūnio,	*I fortify.*
dormio,	*I sleep.*	impĕdio,	*I hinder.*	nūtrio,	*I nourish.*
ērŭdio,	*I train.*	mollio,	*I soften.*	pūnio,	*I punish.*

---

§ 100. THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH THE FOURTH.

Căpio, cēpī, captum, căpĕrĕ,—to take.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Căp-io, *I take*	Căp-ĭmŭs, *We take*
	Căp-ĭs, *thou takest*	Căp-ĭtĭs, *ye take*
	Căp-ĭt, *he takes.*	Căp-iunt, *they take.*

Past-Imperf.	Căp-iēbam,	*I was taking,*	like	aud-iēbam.
Future.	Căp-iam,	*I shall take,*	,,	aud-iam.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	Căp-iam,	*I may take,*	like	aud-iam.
Past-Imperf.	Căp-ĕrem,	*I might take,*	,,	rĕg-ĕrem.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Căp-ĕ,	*take thou,*	like	rĕg-ĕ.
Future.	Căp-ĭto,	*thou shalt take,*	,,	rĕg-ĭto.
	Căp-iunto.	*they shall take,*	,,	aud-iunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Căp-ĕrĕ,**	*to take,*	like	**rĕg-ĕrĕ.**

PARTICIPLE.

Imperfect.	**Căp-iens,**	*taking,*	like	**aud-iens.**

GERUND.

	Căp-iendi,	*of taking,*	like	**aud-iendi.**

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-Ior,**	*I am taken*	**Căp-Imŭr,**	*We are taken*
	Căp-ĕrĭs or **-ĕrĕ,**	*thou art taken*	**Căp-Imĭnī,**	*ye are taken*
	Căp-Itŭr,	*he is taken.*	**Căp-iuntŭr,**	*they are taken.*

Past-Imperf.	**Căp-iēbăr,**	*I was being taken,*	like	**aud-iēbăr.**
Future.	**Căp-iăr,**	*I shall be taken,*	,,	**aud-iăr.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-iăr,**	*I may be taken,*	like	**aud-iăr.**
Past-Imperf.	**Căp-ĕrĕr,**	*I might be taken,*	,,	**rĕg-ĕrĕr.**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-ĕrĕ,**	*be thou taken,*	like	**rĕg-ĕrĕ.**
Future.	**Căp-Itŏr,**	*thou shalt be taken,*	,,	**rĕg-Itŏr.**
	Căp-iuntor,	*they shall be taken,*	,,	**aud-iuntŏr.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Căp-ī,**	*to be taken,*	like	**rĕg-ī.**

Obs. 1. The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-ī, cēp-ĕram, cēp-ĕro, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.

Obs. 2. The Verbs conjugated like căpio are :

făĉio,	fēcī,	factum,	făcĕrĕ,	*make.*
jăcio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jăcĕrĕ,	*throw.*
fŭgio,	fūgī,	fŭgĭtum,	fŭgĕrĕ,	*flee.*
fŏdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fŏdĕrĕ,	*dig.*
răpio,	răpuī,	raptum,	răpĕrĕ,	*seize.*
părĭο,	pĕpĕrī,	partum,	părĕrĕ,	*bring forth.*
quătio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quătĕrĕ,	*shake.*
cŭpio,	cŭpīvī,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕrĕ,	*desire.*
săpio,	săpīvī,		săpĕrĕ,	*taste.*
lăcio,			lăcĕrĕ,	*draw* } rare, except in
spĕcio,			spĕcĕrĕ,	*look* } composition.

Also the Deponent Verbs :

grădiŏr,	gressūs sum,	grădī,	*walk.*
mŏriŏr,	mortūūs sum,	mŏrī,	*die.*
pătiŏr,	passūs sum,	pătī,	*suffer.*

Obs. 3. Ŏrior, ortus sum, ŏrīrī, *to rise,* follows the Third Conjugation only in the Present Indicative and in the Imperative.

§ 101.   I. Hortŏr, hortātŭs sum, hortārī, *to exhort*, like ămŏr.
　　　　II. Vĕreŏr, vĕrĭtŭs sum, vĕrērī, *to fear*,　,,　mŏneŏr.

		I.		II.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	*Present.*	Hortŏr, Hort-ārĭs (ārĕ), &c.	*I exhort,* thou exhortest, &c.	Vĕr-eŏr, Vĕr-ērĭs (ērĕ), &c.	*I fear,* thou fearest, &c.
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ābăr,	*I was exhorting.*	Vĕr-ēbăr,	*I was fearing.*
	Future.	Hort-ābŏr,	*I shall exhort.*	Vĕr-ēbŏr,	*I shall fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sum,	*I have exhorted, or I exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sum,	*I have feared, or I feared.*
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs ĕram,	*I had exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram,	*I had feared.*
	Fut.-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs ĕro,	*I shall have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro,	*I shall have feared.*
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	*Present.*	Hort-ĕr,	*I may exhort.*	Vĕr-eăr,	*I may fear.*
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ārĕr,	*I might exhort.*	Vĕr-ērĕr,	*I might fear.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sim,	*I may have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sim,	*I may have feared.*
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs essem,	*I might have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕssem,	*I might have feared.*
IMPERATIVE.	*Present.*	Hort-ārĕ,	*Exhort thou.*	Vĕr-ērĕ,	*Fear thou.*
	Future.	Hort-ātŏr,	*thou shalt exhort.*	Vĕr-ētŏr,	*thou shalt fear.*
INFINITIVE.	*Imperf.*	Hort-ārī,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ērī,	*to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātum essĕ,	*to have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtum essĕ,	*to have feared.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrum essĕ,	*to be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrum essĕ,	*to be about to fear.*
PARTICIPLES.	*Imperf.*	Hort-ans,	*exhorting.*	Vĕr-ens,	*fearing.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs,	*about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs,	*about to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs,	*having exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs,	*having feared.*
	Gerundive.	Hort-andŭs,	*fit to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-endŭs,	*fit to be feared.*
SUPINES.		Hort-ātum,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtum,	*to fear.*
GERUND.		Hort-ātū, Hort-andi,	*to be exhorted. of exhorting.*	Vĕr-ĭtū, Vĕr-endi,	*to be feared. of fearing.*

Examples for Conjugation.

I. Cōnŏr,　*I endeavour.*
Consōlŏr,　*I console.*
Mīrŏr,　*I wonder.*

II. Intueŏr,　*I behold.*
Mĕreŏr,　*I deserve.*
Pollĭceŏr,　*I promise.*

Obs. 1. Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.
Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle with an active meaning: as, hortātŭs, *having exhorted.*
The Gerundive and Perfect Participle (the latter only in certain verbs), are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning: as, hortandŭs, *fit to be exhorted;* ădeptus, *having obtained,* or *having been obtained.* The following are the principal Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs used in a Passive sense: ăbōmĭnātus, ădeptus auspĭcātus, amplexus, complexus, com

III. Lŏquŏr, lŏcūtŭs sum, lŏquī,   *to speak*, like rĕgŏr.
IV. Partiŏr, partītŭs sum, partīrī,   *to divide*, „ audiŏr.

	III.			IV.		
Present.	Lŏquŏr,	I speak.		Partiŏr,	I divide.	INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Lŏqu-ĕrĭs, (ĕrĕ), &c.	thou speakest, &c.		Part-īrĭs (īrĕ), &c.	thou dividest, &c.	
Past-Imp.	Lŏqu-ēbăr,	I was speaking.		Part-iēbăr,	I was dividing.	
Future.	Lŏqu-ăr,	I shall speak.		Part-iăr,	I shall divide.	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs sum,	I have spoken, or I spoke.		Part-ītŭs sum,	I have divided, or I divided.	
Past-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕram,	I had spoken.		Part-ītŭs ĕram,	I had divided.	
Fut.-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕro,	I shall have spoken.		Part-ītŭs ĕro,	I shall have divided.	
Present.	Lŏqu-ăr,	I may speak.		Part-iăr,	I may divide.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Past-Imp.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕr,	I might speak.		Part-īrĕr,	I might divide.	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs sim,	I may be about to speak.		Part-ītūrŭs sim,	I may be about to divide.	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs sim,	I may have spoken.		Part-ītŭs sim,	I may have divided.	
Past-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs essem,	I might have spoken.		Part-ītŭs essem,	I might have divided.	
Present.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕ,	Speak thou.		Part-īrĕ,	Divide thou.	IMPERATIVE.
Future.	Lŏqu-ĭtŏr,	thou shalt speak.		Part-ītŏr,	thou shalt divide.	
Imperf.	Lŏqu-ī,	to speak.		Part-īrī,	to divide.	INFINITIVE.
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tum essĕ,	to have spoken.		Part-ītum essĕ,	to have divided.	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrum essĕ,	to be about to speak.		Part-ītūrum essĕ,	to be about to divide.	
Imperf.	Lŏqu-ens,	speaking.		Part-iens,	dividing.	PARTICIPLES.
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs,	about to speak.		Part-ītūrŭs,	about to divide.	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs,	having spoken.		Part-ītŭs,	having divided.	
Gerundive.	Lŏqu-endŭs,	fit to be spoken.		Part-iendŭs,	fit to be divided.	
SUPINES.	Lŏcū-tum,	to speak.		Part-ītum,	to divide.	
	Lŏcū-tū,	to be spoken.		Part-ītū,	to be divided.	
GERUND.	Lŏqu-endi,	of speaking.		Part-iendi,	of dividing.	

Examples for Conjugation.

III. Fruŏr, fruĭtŭs sum,   *I enjoy.*   IV. Blandiŏr,   *I flatter.*
Fungŏr, functŭs sum,   *I perform.*   Largiŏr,   *I give money.*
Lābŏr, lapsŭs sum,   *I slip.*   Mentiŏr,   *I lie.*

mentus, confessus, dētestātus, ēmentītus, expertus, exsecrātus, mĕdĭtātus, mensus, mŏdĕrātus, ŏpīnātus, pactus, partītus, testātus, ultus. See §§ 169–172.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. The four following Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called *Semi-Deponents*, or *Neuter-Passives* :

Sŏleo, sŏlĭtŭs sum, sŏlĕrĕ, *to be accustomed.*   Gaudeo, gāvīsŭs sum, gaudērĕ, *to rejoice.*
Audeo, ausŭs sum, audērĕ, *to dare.*   Fīdo, fīsŭs sum, fīdĕrĕ,   *to trust.*

CHAPTER XVII.—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 102. I. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Future Participle in *turus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Amātūrŭs sum,**	*I am about to love.*
Past-Imperf.	**Amātūrŭs ĕram,**	*I was about to love.*
Future.	**Amātūrŭs ĕro,**	*I shall be about to love.*
Perfect.	**Amātūrŭs fuī,**	*I have been or was about to love.*
Past-Perfect.	**Amātūrŭs fuĕram,**	*I had been about to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Amātūrŭs sim,**	*I may be about to love.*
Past-Imperf.	**Amātūrŭs essem,**	*I might be about to love.*
Perfect.	**Amātūrŭs fuĕrim,**	*I may have been about to love.*
Past-Perfect.	**Amātūrŭs fuissem,**	*I might have been about to love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Amātūrum essĕ,**	*to be about to love.*
Perfect.	**Amātūrum fuissĕ,**	*to have been about to love.*

II. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Gerundive with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which *is to be*, *should be*, or *ought to be done*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Amandŭs sum,**	*I am to be loved.*
Past-Imperf.	**Amandŭs ĕram,**	*I was to be loved.*
Future.	**Amandŭs ĕro,**	*I shall be to be loved.*
Perfect.	**Amandŭs fuī,**	*I have been or was to be loved.*
Past-Perfect.	**Amandŭs fuĕram,**	*I had been to be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Amandŭs sim,**	*I may be to be loved.*
Past-Imperf.	**Amandŭs essem,**	*I might be to be loved.*
Perfect.	**Amandŭs fuĕrim,**	*I may have been to be loved.*
Past-Perfect.	**Amandŭs fuissem,**	*I might have been to be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Amandum essĕ,**	*to be fit to be loved.*
Perfect.	**Amandum fuissĕ,**	*to have been fit to be loved.*

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative : as, mĭhi eundum est, *I must go ;* oblīviscendum tĭbi injūrĭārum essĕ censeo, *I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs.*

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.

CHAPTER XVIII.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. STEMS.—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a* : as, ăma, *love.*

The Stems of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e* : as, mŏne, *advise.*

The Stems of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a *consonant* or *u* : as, rĕg, *rule;* mĭnu, *lessen.*

The Stems of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i* : as, audi, *hear.*

§ 104. UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS. — In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

		III CONJUGATION.	
Sing.	1.	rĕg-o	mĭnu-o
	2.	rĕg-ĭs	mĭnu-ĭs
	3.	rĕg-ĭt	mĭnu-ĭt
Plur.	1.	rĕg-ĭmŭs	mĭnu-ĭmŭs
	2.	rĕg-ĭtĭs	mĭnu-ĭtĭs
	3.	rĕg-unt	mĭnu-unt

	I CONJUGATION.	II CONJUGATION.	IV CONJUGATION.
Sing. 1.	ăma-o = ămo	mŏne-o	audi-o
2.	ăma-is = ămās	mŏne-is = mŏnēs	audi-ĭs = audīs
3.	ăma-ĭt = ămăt	mŏne-ĭt = mŏnĕt	audi-ĭt = audĭt
Plur. 1.	ăma-ĭmŭs = ămāmŭs	mŏne-ĭmŭs = mŏnēmŭs	audi-ĭmŭs = audīmŭs
2.	ăma-ĭtĭs = ămātĭs	mŏne-ĭtĭs = mŏnētĭs	audi-ĭtĭs = audītĭs
3.	ăma-unt = ămant	mŏne-unt = mŏnent	audi-unt

§ 105. PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form :

	Sing.	*Plur.*		*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	-m	-mus	as in	rĕgēba-m	rĕgēbā-mŭs
2.	-s	-tis	,,	rĕgēba-s	rĕgēbā-tĭs
3.	-t	-nt	,,	rĕgēbă-t	rĕgēba-nt.

Or with a vowel prefixed :

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
1.	o-(m)	ĭ-mŭs	as in	rĕg-o	rĕg-ĭ-mŭs
2.	ĭ-s	ĭ-tĭs	,,	rĕg-i-s	rĕg-ĭ-tĭs
3.	ĭ-t	u-nt	,,	rĕg-ĭ-t	rĕg-u-nt.

§ 106. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES.—1. *Present Tenses.—The Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the Imperative the *s*, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and *e* alone remains : as, rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ĭtĕ : in the contracted conjugations, ămā = ăma-ĕ ; mŏnē = mŏne-ĕ ; audī = audi-ĕ.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix -a : as, rĕg-a-m, mŏne-a-m, audi-a-m. In the 1st conjugation the *a* of the stem is contracted with the a of the tense suffix into *e* : as, ăma-a-m = ăme-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix ĕrĕ : as, rĕg-ĕrĕ : in the contracted conjugations, ămā-rĕ = ăma-ĕrĕ ; mŏnē-re = mŏne-ĕrĕ ; audī-rĕ = audi-ĕrĕ. The *Participle* has the suffix -ens (stem -*ent*) : as, rĕg-ens, audi-ens : in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, ăma-ns = ăma-ens ; mŏne-ns = mŏne-ens.

> *Obs.* The *e* of the Imperative is dropped in dīc, *speak*, from dīco ; dūc, *lead*, from dūco ; făc, *make*, from făcio ; fĕr, *bring*, from fĕro.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tenses.* — The *Indicative* has the tense suffix ēba : as, rĕg-ēba-m, audi-ēba-m ; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, ămā-ba-m = ăma-ēba-m ; mŏnē-ba-m = mŏne--ēba-m. The Subjunctive has the tense suffix ĕre : as, rĕg-ĕre-m : in the contracted conjugations ămā-re-m = ăma-ĕre-m ; mŏnē-re-m = mŏne-ĕre-m ; audī-re-m = audi-ĕre-m.

3. *Future Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix ĭ in the 1st and 2nd conjugations : as, ămā-b-o ; mŏnē-b-o : and the tense suffix a or e in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, a being used in the first person, and e in all the other persons : as, rĕg-a-m, rĕg-ē-s, rĕg-ĕ-t, &c. ; audi-a-m, audi-ē-s, audi-ĕ-t, &c.

§ 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed :

1. By adding **v** to the Stem : as, ăma (ămo), ămā-v-ī ; audi (audio), audī-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding **u** to the Stem : as, mŏnĕ (mŏneo), mŏn-u-ī. The

ur.
-mŭs
-tĭs
-nt.

—1. *Present*
d by adding
t any tense
ation of the
: as, rĕg-ĕ,
ma-ĕ; mŏnē

s, rĕg-a-m,
he *a* of the
into *e* : as,
suffix ĕrĕ:
, ămā-rĕ =
-ĕrĕ. The
g-ens, audi-
= ăma-ens ;

lĭco; dūc, *lead,*

the tense
t and 2nd
m = mŏne-
e: as, rĕg-
-m = ăma-
udi-ĕre-m.

se suffix l
monĕ-b-o:
a conjuga-
l the other
audi-a-m,

he Perfect

ā-v-ī; audi
he Perfects

n-u-ī. The

---

final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

Obs. 1. The terminations **v** and **u** are the same, and are derived from fu-i, the Perfect of the verb *to be*.

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v* : as, mĭnu-o, mĭnu-ĭ, *lessen ;* volv-o, volv-ĭ, *roll ;* vert-o, vert-ĭ, *turn.*

3. By adding **s** to the Stem : as, rĕg (rĕgŏ), rexi = reg-s-ī.

Obs. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

(i) *cs, gs, qus, hs* are contracted into *x* : as, dūco, duxi, *lead ;* cŏquo, coxi, *cook ;* trăho, traxi, *drag.*

(ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s* : as, scrĭbo, scripsĭ, *write ;* nūbo, nupsĭ, *marry* (of women).

(iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s* : as, mitto, mīsĭ, *send ;* laedo, laesĭ, *injure.*

4. By reduplication : as,

tend	(tendo),	tĕ-tendī,	*stretch.*
căd	(cădo),	cĕ-cĭdī,	*fall.*
morde	(mordeo),	mŏ-mordī,	*bite.*

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem : as,

jăc or jăci	(jăcio),	jēcī,	*throw.*
vĕni	(vĕnio),	vēnī,	*come.*
mŏve	(mŏveo),	mōvī,	*move.*

Obs. In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted : as, tundo, tŭtŭdī, *beat,* but contundo, contŭdī, *beat small, bruise ;* pello, pĕpŭlī, *drive,* but compello, compŭlī, *drive together.*

1. *Present-Perfect* or *Aorist Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **is**; *2nd pers.* ămāv-is-tī, ămāv-is-tis ; *3rd pers.* ămāv-ēr-unt ; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **eri**: as, ămāv-ĕri-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix **issĕ** : as, ămāv-issĕ.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **ĕra**: as, ămāv-ĕra-m. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **isse**: as, ămāv-isse-m.

3. The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix **ĕr**: as, ămāv-ĕr-o.

§ 108. The *Supine* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem : as,

I. Ămā-tum, ămā-tū.		III. Rec-tum, rec-tū.
II. Mŏnĭ-tum, mŏnĭ-tu.		IV. Audī-tum, audī-tū.

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i.*

Obs. 2. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted :

(i) *g, qu, h* become *c* before *t* : as, rĕgo, rectum ; cŏquo, coctum ; trăho, tractum.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t* : as, scrĭbo, scriptum ; nūbo, nuptum.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s* : as, laedo, laesum, *injure ;* claudo, clausum, *shut.* In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s* : as, cēdo, ces-sum, *yield ;* mitto, mis-sum, *send.*

§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tŭrŭs* to the Stem : as,

ămă-tūrŭs; mŏnĭ-tūrŭs; rec-tūrŭs; audī-tūrŭs.

Obs. 1. The same euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine : as,

tractūrŭs, scriptūrŭs, laesūrŭs.

Obs. 2. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles do not adopt these variations : as,

	Stem.	Supine.	Fut. Part.	
jŭvo	(jŭva)	jūtum	jŭvātūrŭs,	*help.*
sĕco	(sĕca)	sectum	sĕcātūrŭs,	*cut.*
sŏno	(sŏna)	sŏnĭtum	sŏnātūrŭs,	*sound.*
mŏriŏr	(mŏr and mŏri)	mortuŭs (*part.*)	mŏrĭtūrŭs,	*die.*

§ 110. REMARKS UPON CERTAIN FORMS.

1. *Perfect Active.*—On the omission of *v*, *vi*, and *ve*, in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

The suffix *ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets : as, dedĕrunt, *they gave.* The suffix *ēre* instead of *ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus* : as, făciundum from făcio, *make* or *do*; pŏtiundum from pŏtiŏr, *obtain possession of.*

3. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification : as, laetābundus, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy*; lacrĭmābundus, *weeping profusely*; fŭrĭbundus, *full of rage*; mŏrĭbundus, *in the very article of death.*

§ 111. ANCIENT FORMS.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier* : as, ămāriĕr instead of ămāri; rĕgiĕr, instead of rĕgi.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im*, *is*, *it* : as, sim, sīs, sīt from sum ; vĕlim from vŏlo, *be willing*; nōlim from nōlo, *be unwilling*; mālĭm from mālo, *be more willing.* Also ĕdim instead of ĕdam from ĕdo, *eat*; and duim from do, *give*, and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations : as, dī duint, *may the gods grant*; dī tē perduint, *may the gods destroy thee.*

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim*, the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim*, instead of *ero* and *erim* : hence the forms levasso, faxo, faxim, are contractions of lĕvāvĕso, făcĕso, făcĕsim. In like manner ausim is formed from the old Perfect ausi (from audeo), which has become obsolete.

CHAPTER XIX.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given:

I. Possum, pŏtuī, possĕ,—*to be able.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. *Present.*			**4.** *Perfect.*
S. Pos-sum	Pos-sim	*S.*	Pŏt-uī	Pŏt-uĕrim
Pŏt-ĕs	Pos-sīs		Pŏt-uistī	Pŏt-uĕrĭs
Pŏt-est	Pos-sĭt		Pŏt-uĭt	Pŏt-uĕrĭt
P. Pos-sŭmŭs	Pos-sīmŭs	*P.*	Pŏt-uĭmŭs	Pŏt-uĕrĭmŭs
Pŏt-estĭs	Pos-sĭtĭs		Pŏt-uistĭs	Pŏt-uĕritĭs
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint		Pŏt-uĕrunt (ĕrĕ)	Pŏt-uĕrint
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*			**5.** *Past-Perfect.*
S. Pŏt-ĕram	Pos-sem	*S.*	Pŏt-uĕram	Pŏt-uissem
Pŏt-ĕrās	Pos-sēs		Pŏt-uĕrās	Pŏt-uissēs
Pŏt-ĕrĕt	Pos-sĕt		Pŏt-uĕrăt	Pŏt-uissĕt
P. Pŏt-ĕrāmŭs	Pos-sēmŭs	*P.*	Pŏt-uĕrāmŭs	Pŏt-uissēmŭs
Pŏt-ĕrātĭs	Pos-sētĭs		Pŏt-uĕrātĭs	Pŏt-uissētĭs
Pŏt-ĕrant	Pos-sent		Pŏt-uĕrant	Pŏt-uissent
	3. *Future.*			**6.** *Future-Perfect.*
S. Pŏt-ĕro	(wanting.)	*S.*	Pŏt-uĕro	(wanting.)
Pŏt-ĕrĭs			Pŏt-uĕrĭs	
Pŏt-ĕrĭt			Pŏt-uĕrĭt	
P. Pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs		*P.*	Pŏt-uĕrimŭs	
Pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs			Pŏt-uĕritĭs	
Pŏt-ĕrunt			Pŏt-uĕrint	

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect—**Possĕ.**   *Perfect*—**Pŏtuissĕ.**   *Future*—wanting.

The *Imperative, Gerund,* and *Supine* are wanting
The *Imperfect Participle* pŏtens is used only as an Adjective, *powerful.*

Obs. Possum is compounded of 'pot' (pŏtis, *able*) and sum: hence pos-sum is a contraction of pŏt-sum; pos-sim of pŏt-sim; pos-sem of pŏt-essem.; pŏt-uī of pot-fuī; and pos-sĕ of pŏt-essĕ.

§ 113. II. **Vŏlo,** vŏluī, vellĕ, — *to be willing.*
III. **Nōlo,** nōluī, nollĕ, — *to be unwilling.*
IV. **Mālo,** māluī, mallĕ, — *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	**Vŏlo**	**Nōlo**	**Mālo**
	Vīs	**Non vīs**	**Māvīs**
	Vult	**Non vult**	**Māvult**
P.	**Vŏlŭmŭs**	**Nōlŭmŭs**	**Mālŭmŭs**
	Vultĭs	**Non vultĭs**	**Māvultĭs**
	Vŏlunt	**Nōlunt**	**Mālunt**

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	**Vŏl-ēbam**	**Nōl-ēbam**	**Māl-ēbam**
	Vŏl-ēbās	**Nōl-ēbās**	**Māl-ēbās**
	Vŏl-ēbăt	**Nōl-ēbăt**	**Māl-ēbăt**
P.	**Vŏl-ēbāmŭs**	**Nōl-ēbāmŭs**	**Māl-ēbāmŭs**
	Vŏl-ēbātĭs	**Nōl-ēbātĭs**	**Māl-ēbātĭs**
	Vŏl-ēbant	**Nōl-ēbant**	**Māl-ēbant**

3. *Future.*

S.	**Vŏl-am**	**Nōl-am**	**Māl-am**
	Vŏl-ēs	**Nōl-ēs**	**Māl-ēs**
	Vŏl-ĕt	**Nōl-ĕt**	**Māl-ĕt**
P.	**Vŏl-ēmŭs**	**Nōl-ēmŭs**	**Māl-ēmŭs**
	Vŏl-ētĭs	**Nōl-ētĭs**	**Māl-ētĭs**
	Vŏl-ent	**Nōl-ent**	**Māl-ent**

4. *Perfect.*

S.	**Vŏl-uī**	**Nōl-uī**	**Māl-uī**
	Vŏl-uistī	**Nōl-uistī**	**Māl-uistī**
	Vŏl-uĭt	**Nōl-uĭt**	**Māl-uĭt**
P.	**Vŏl-uĭmŭs**	**Nōl-uĭmŭs**	**Māl-uĭmŭs**
	Vŏl-uistĭs	**Nōl-uistĭs**	**Māl-uistĭs**
	Vŏl-uērunt or -uērĕ	**Nōl-uērunt or -uērĕ**	**Māl-uērunt or -uĕrĕ**

5. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	**Vŏl-uĕram**	**Nōl-uĕram**	**Māl-uĕram**
	Vŏl-uĕrās	**Nōl-uĕrās**	**Māl-uĕrās**
	Vŏl-uĕrăt	**Nōl-uĕrăt**	**Māl-uĕrăt**
P.	**Vŏl-uĕrāmŭs**	**Nōl-uĕrāmŭs**	**Māl-uĕrāmŭs**
	Vŏl-uĕrātĭs	**Nōl-uĕrātĭs**	**Māl-uĕrātĭs**
	Vŏl-uĕrant	**Nōl-uĕrant**	**Māl-uĕrant**

6. *Future-Perfect.*

S.	**Vŏl-uĕro**	**Nōl-uĕro**	**Māl-uĕro**
	Vŏl-uĕrĭs	**Nōl-uĕrĭs**	**Māl-uĕrĭs**
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	**Nōl-uĕrĭt**	**Māl-uĕrĭt**
P.	**Vol-uĕrimŭs**	**Nōl-uĕrimŭs**	**Māl-uĕrimŭs**
	Vŏl-uĕritĭs	**Nōl-uĕritĭs**	**Māl-uĕritĭs**
	Vŏl-uĕrint	**Nōl-uĕrint**	**Māl-uĕrint**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	Věl-im	Nōl-im	Māl-im
	Věl-īs	Nōl-īs	Māl-īs
	Věl-ĭt	Nōl-ĭt	Māl-ĭt
P.	Věl-īmŭs	Nōl-īmŭs	Māl-īmŭs
	Věl-ītĭs	Nōl-ītĭs	Māl-ītĭs
	Věl-int	Nōl-int	Māl-int

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
	Vel-lĕt	Nol-lĕt	Mal-lĕt
P.	Vel-lēmŭs	Nol-lēmŭs	Mal-lēmŭs
	Vel-lētĭs	Nol-lētĭs	Mal-lētĭs
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕrim	Nōl-uĕrim	Māl-uĕrim
	Vŏl-uĕrĭs	Nōl-uĕrĭs	Māl-uĕrĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nōl-uĕrĭt	Māl-uĕrĭt
P.	Vŏl-uĕrimŭs	Nōl-uĕrimŭs	Māl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritĭs	Nōl-uĕritĭs	Māl-uĕritĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nōl-uĕrint	Māl-uĕrint

4. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uissem	Nōl-uissem	Māl-uissem
	Vŏl-uissēs	Nōl-uissēs	Māl-uissēs
	Vŏl-uissĕt	Nōl-uissĕt	Māl-uissĕt
P.	Vŏl-uissēmŭs	Nōl-uissēmŭs	Māl-uissēmŭs
	Vŏl-uissētĭs	Nōl-uissētĭs	Māl-uissētĭs
	Vŏl-uissent	Nōl-uissent	Māl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	Nōl-ī	(wanting.)
	Nōl-ītĕ	

Future.

Nōl-īto
Nōl-īto
Nōl-ītōtĕ
Nōl-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.

Vel-lĕ	Nol-lĕ	Mal-lĕ

Perfect.

Vŏl-uissĕ	Nōl-uissĕ	Māl-uissĕ

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE

Vŏlens　　　　　**Nŏlens**　　　　　(wanting.)

Obs. 1. Nŏlo is a contraction of ne, *not*, and vŏlo; mālo of măg (magis), *more*, and vŏlo.

Obs. 2. In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the *r* of the terminations is changed into *l*: thus, vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem, are contractions of vĕl-ĕrem, nŏl-ĕrem, māl-ĕrem; and vel-lĕ, nol-lĕ, mal-lĕ, of vĕl-ĕrĕ, nŏl-ĕrĕ, māl-ĕrĕ.

Obs. 3. Sī vīs, *if you will, if you please*, is sometimes contracted into sīs.

§ 114. V.　Fĕro, tŭlī, ferrĕ, lātum,—*to bear*.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. *Present.*			**4. *Perfect.***
S. Fĕr-o	Fĕr-am	*S.*	Tŭl-ī	Tŭl-ĕrim
Fer-s	Fĕr-ās		Tŭl-istī	Tŭl-ĕrīs
Fer-t	Fĕr-ăt		Tŭl-ĭt	Tŭl-ĕrĭt
P Fĕr-ĭmŭs	Fĕr-āmŭs	*P.*	Tŭl-ĭmŭs	Tŭl-ĕrimŭs
Fĕr-tĭs	Fĕr-ātĭs		Tŭl-istĭs	Tŭl-ĕritĭs
Fĕr-unt	Fĕr-ant		Tŭl-ĕrunt *or* ērĕ Tŭl-ĕrint
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*			**5. *Past-Perfect.***
S. Fĕr-ēbam	Fer-rem	*S.*	Tŭl-ĕram	Tŭl-issem
Fĕr-ēbās	Fer-rēs		Tŭl-ĕrās	Tŭl-issēs
Fĕr-ēbăt	Fer-rĕt		Tŭl-ĕrăt	Tŭl-issĕt
P. Fĕr-ēbāmŭs	Fer-rēmŭs	*P.*	Tŭl-ĕrāmŭs	Tŭl-issēmŭs
Fĕr-ēbātĭs	Fer-rētĭs		Tŭl-ĕrātĭs	Tŭl-issētĭs
Fĕr-ēbant	Fer-rent		Tŭl-ĕrant	Tŭl-issent
	3. *Future.*			**6. *Future-Perfect.***
S. Fĕr-am	Lātūrŭs sim	*S.*	Tŭl-ĕro	(wanting.)
Fĕr-ēs	Lātūrŭs sīs		Tŭl-ĕrĭs	
Fĕr-ĕt	Lātūrŭs sĭt		Tŭl-ĕrĭt	
P. Fĕr-ēmŭs	Lātūrī sīmŭs	*P.*	Tŭl-ĕrimŭs	
Fĕr-ētĭs	Lātūrī sītĭs		Tŭl-ĕritĭs	
Fĕr-ent	Lātūrī sint		Tŭl-ĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Fĕr	*Imperfect.*	Fĕrens
	Fer-tĕ	*Future.*	Lātūrŭs (ă, um)
Future.	Fer-to		
	Fer-to	SUPINES.	
	Fer-tōtĕ		Lātum
	Fĕr-unto		Lātū
INFINITIVE.			
Imperfect.	Fer-rĕ	GERUND.	
Perfect.	Tŭl-issĕ	*Gen.*	Fĕr-endī
Future.	Lātūrum essĕ		&c.

§ 114.

(left margin, partial)

wanting.)

of măg (magis);

ilate, the *r* of the
mal-lem, are con-
nol-lĕ, mal-lĕ, of

ar.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
ct.
Tŭl-ĕrim
Tŭl-ĕrĭs
Tŭl-ĕrĭt
Tŭl-ĕrĭmŭs
Tŭl-ĕrĭtĭs
Tŭl-ĕrint

fect.
Tŭl-issem
Tŭl-issēs
Tŭl-issĕt
Tŭl-issēmŭs
Tŭl-issētĭs
Tŭl-issent

fect.
wanting.)

s.
s (ă, um)

dī

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.* — 4. *Perfect.*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
S.	Fĕr-ŏr	Fĕr-ăr	S.	Lātŭs sum	Lātŭs sim
	Fer-rĭs	Fĕr-ārĭs		Lātŭs ĕs	Lātŭs sīs
	Fer-tŭr	Fĕr-ātŭr		Lātŭs est	Lātŭs sĭt
P.	Fĕr-ĭmŭr	Fĕr-āmŭr	P.	Lātī sŭmŭs	Lātī sīmŭs
	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī	Fĕr-āmĭnī		Lātī estĭs	Lātī sitĭs
	Fĕr-untŭr	Fĕr-antŭr		Lātī sunt	Lātī sint

2. *Past-Imperfect.* — 5. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Fĕr-ēbăr	Fer-rer	S.	Lātŭs ĕram	Lātŭs essem
	Fĕr-ēbārĭs	Fer-rērĭs		Lātŭs ĕrās	Lātŭs essēs
	Fĕr-ēbātŭr	Fer-rētŭr		Lātŭs ĕrăt	Lātŭs essĕt
P.	Fĕr-ēbāmŭr	Fer-rēmŭr	P.	Lātī ĕrāmŭs	Lātī essēmŭs
	Fĕr-ēbāmĭnī	Fer-rēmĭnī		Lātī ĕrātĭs	Lātī essētĭs
	Fĕr-ēbantŭr	Fer-rentŭr		Lātī ĕrant	Lātī essent

3. *Future.* — 6. *Future-Perfect.*

S.	Fĕr-ăr	(wanting.)	S.	Lātŭs ĕro	(wanting.)
	Fĕr-ērĭs			Lātŭs ĕrĭs	
	Fĕr-ētŭr			Lātŭs ĕrĭt	
P.	Fĕr-ēmŭr		P.	Lātī ĕrĭmŭs	
	Fĕr-ēmĭnī			Lātī ĕrĭtĭs	
	Fĕr-entŭr			Lātī ĕrunt	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	Fĕr-rĕ	Imperfect.	Fer-rī
	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī	Perfect.	Lātum (am, um) essĕ
Future.	Fer-tŏr	Future.	Lātum īrī
	Fer-tŏr		
	Fĕr-untŏr	PARTICIPLES.	
		Perfect.	Lātŭs (ă, um)
		Gerundive.	Fĕr-endŭs (ă, um)

Obs. 1. In the Imperfect Tenses of fĕro the only irregularity is the omis-
sion of ĕ and ĭ in some of the terminations: thus, fer-s = fĕr-ĭs; fer-t =
fĕr-ĭt; fer-rem = fĕr-ĕrem; fer-rĕ = fĕr-ĕrĕ, &c.

Obs. 2. The compounds of fĕro are conjugated in the same way:

Affĕro (ad, fero),	attŭlī,	afferrĕ,	allātum,	*bring to.*
Aufĕro (ab, fero),	abstŭlī,	auferrĕ,	ablātum,	*carry away.*
Effĕro (ex, fero),	extŭlī,	efferrĕ,	ēlātum,	*carry out.*
Infĕro (in, fero),	intŭlī,	inferrĕ,	illātum,	*carry into.*
Offĕro (ob, fero),	obtŭlī,	offerrĕ,	oblātum,	*present.*
Prōfĕro (prō, fero),	prōtŭlī,	prōferrĕ,	prōlātum,	*carry forward.*
Rĕfĕro (re, fero),	{rĕtŭli / rettŭli},	rĕferrĕ,	rĕlātum,	*bring back.*

§ 115. VI. Ĕdo, ēdī, ĕdĕrĕ or essĕ, ēsum,—*to eat.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

Ĕd-o	Ĕd-am *or* ĕd-im
Ĕd-ĭs *or* ēs	Ĕd-ās *or* ĕd-ĭs
Ĕd-ĭt *or* est	Ĕd-ăt *or* ĕd-ĭt
Ĕd-ĭmŭs	Ĕd-amŭs *or* ĕd-ĭmŭs
Ĕd-ĭtĭs *or* estĭs	Ĕd-ātĭs *or* ĕd-ĭtĭs
Ĕd-unt	Ĕd-ant *or* ĕd-int

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

Ĕd-ēbam	Ĕd-ĕrem *or* essem
Ĕd-ēbās	Ĕd-ĕrēs *or* essēs
Ĕd-ēbăt	Ĕd-ĕrĕt *or* essĕt
Ĕd-ēbāmŭs	Ĕd-ĕrēmŭs *or* essēmŭs
Ĕd-ēbātĭs	Ĕd-ĕrētĭs *or* essētĭs
Ĕd-ēbant	Ĕd-ĕrent *or* essent

3. *Future.*

Ĕd-am	Ēsūrŭs sim
Ĕd-ēs	Ēsūrŭs sīs
Ĕd-ĕt	Ēsūrŭs sĭt
Ĕd-ēmŭs	Ēsūrī sīmŭs
Ĕd-ētĭs	Ēsūrī sītĭs
Ĕd-ent	Ēsūrī sint

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. *Perfect.*

S.	Ĕd-ī	Ĕd-ĕrim
	Ĕd-istī	Ĕd-ĕrĭs
	Ĕd-ĭt	Ĕd-ĕrĭt
P.	Ĕd-ĭmŭs	Ĕd-ĕrimŭs
	Ĕd-istĭs	Ĕd-ĕritĭs
	Ĕd-ērunt *or* -ērĕ	Ĕd-ĕrint

5. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Ĕd-ĕram	Ĕd-issem
	Ĕd-ĕrās	Ĕd-issēs
	Ĕd-ĕrăt	Ĕd-issĕt
P.	Ĕd-ĕrāmŭs	Ĕd-issēmŭs
	Ĕd-ĕrātĭs	Ĕd-issētĭs
	Ĕd-ĕrant	Ĕd-issent

6. *Future-Perfect.*

S.	Ĕd-ĕro	(wanting.)
	Ĕd-ĕrĭs	
	Ĕd-ĕrĭt	
P.	Ĕd-ĕrimŭs	
	Ĕd-ĕritĭs	
	Ĕd-ĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	Ĕd-ĕ *or* es
	Ĕd-ĭtĕ *or* estĕ
Future.	Ĕd-ĭto *or* esto
	Ĕd-ĭto *or* esto
	Ĕd-ĭtōtĕ *or* estōtĕ
	Ĕd-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.	Ĕd-ĕrĕ *or* essĕ
Perfect.	Ĕd-issĕ
Future.	Ēsūrum (am, um) esse

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect.	Ĕd-ens
Future.	Ēsūrŭs (ă, um)

SUPINES.

Ēsum
Ēsū

GERUND.

Gen.	Ĕd-endī, &c.

Obs. 1. The Passive Voice is regular : only *estŭr* is used instead of ĕdĭtŭr, and *essētŭr* instead of ĕdĕrētŭr. The Perfect Participle is ēsus.

Obs. 2. The compound cŏmĕdo, *eat up*, is conjugated in the same way : as, cŏmĕdĭs *or* cŏmēs ; cŏmĕdĭt *or* cŏmest, &c.

§ 116. VII. Ĕo, Ivĭ, Irĕ, Ĭtum,—*to go.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. *Present.*			**4. *Perfect.***	
S.	Ĕ-o	E-am	S.	I-vĭ *or* I-I	I-vĕrim *or* I-ĕrim
	I-s	E-ās		I-vistI &c.	I-vĕrĭs &c.
	Ĭ-t	E-ăt		I-vĭt &c.	I-vĕrĭt &c.
P.	I-mŭs	E-āmŭs	P.	I-vĭmŭs &c.	I-vĕrimŭs &c.
	Ĭ-tis	E-ātĭs		I-vistĭs &c.	I-vĕritĭs &c.
	E-unt	E-ant		I-vĕrunt &c.	I-vĕrint &c.
				or I-vĕrĕ	
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*			**5. *Past-Perfect.***	
S.	I-bam	Ĭ-rem	S.	I-vĕram *or*	I-vissem, I-issem
	I-bās	Ĭ-rēs		I-ĕram	*or* I-ssem
	I-băt	Ĭ-rĕt		I-vĕrās &c.	I-vissēs &c.
P.	I-bāmŭs	Ĭ-rēmŭs		I-vĕrăt &c.	I-vissĕt &c.
	I-bātĭs	Ĭ-rētis	P.	I-vĕrāmŭs &c.	I-vissēmŭs &c.
	Ĭ-bant	Ĭ-rent		I-vĕrātĭs &c.	I-vissētĭs &c.
				I-vĕrant &c.	I-vissent &c.
	3. *Future.*			**6. *Future-Perfect.***	
S.	I-bo	Ĭ-tūrŭs sim	S.	I-vĕro *or* I-ĕro	(wanting.)
	Ĭ-bĭs	Ĭ-tūrŭs sīs		I-vĕrĭs &c.	
	I-bĭt	Ĭ-tūrŭs sĭt		I-vĕrĭt &c.	
P.	I-bĭmŭs	Ĭ-tūrī sīmŭs	P.	I-vĕrimŭs &c.	
	I-bĭtĭs	Ĭ-tūrī sītĭs		I-vĕritĭs &c.	
	I-bunt	Ĭ-tūrī sint		I-vĕrint &c.	

	IMPERATIVE.			PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	I				
	Ĭ-tĕ		*Imperfect.*	I-ens (*Gen.* e-untĭs)	
Future.	I-to		*Future.*	Ĭ-tūrŭs (ă, um)	
	I-to				
	Ĭ-tōtĕ				
	Ĕ-unto				

	INFINITIVE.			GERUND.	
Imperfect.	I-rĕ		*Gen.*	E-undi, &c.	
Perfect.	I-vissĕ, iissĕ *or* issĕ				
Future.	Ĭ-tūrum (am, um) essĕ				

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *ọ*,
and *u :* as, eo, eunt, eam, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. INDIC.: Itŭr, Ibātŭr, Ibĭtŭr,
Ĭtum est, &c. SUBJ.: eātŭr, Irētŭr, Ĭtum sĭt, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of eo usually take *ii*, rarely *ivi*, in the Perfect Tenses:
as, ădeo, *I approach*, makes ădii, ădiĕram, ădiissem, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of eo, which have a transitive meaning, are conju-
gated throughout in the Passive: as, ădeo, *I approach*; Pass.: ădeŏr,
ădirĭs, ădItŭr, ădImŭr, ădImĭnI, ădeuntŭr, &c.

Obs. 5. Ambio, *I go about*, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated re-
gularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find ambiĕbam,
but occasionally ambĭbam (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund ambiendi, &c.
The Perf. Participle is ambĭtus (Ov. Met. i. 37), though the Verbal Sub-
stantive is ambĭtus.

§ 117. **VIII.** Queo, quīvī, quīrĕ, quītum, – *to be able.*
§ 118.   **IX.** Nĕqueo, nĕquīvī, nĕquīrĕ, nĕquītum, — *to be unable.*

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like ĕo, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative non quīs, non quīt are used instead of nĕquis, nĕquīt.

---

§ 119. X.—*Neuter Passives.*

A. Three Neuter Verbs—**Fīo,** *to become,* or *be made,* **vāpulo,** *to be beaten,* **vēneo,** *to be sold,* are Passive in their *signification* and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives.*

1. **Fīo, factŭs sum, fīĕrī,**—*to become* or *be made.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. Present.		*4. Perfect.*
S. Fī-o	Fī-am	S. Factŭs sum	Factŭs sim
Fī-s	Fī-ās	Factŭs ĕs	Factŭs sīs
Fī-t *or* fĭ-t	Fī-ăt	Factŭs est	Factŭs sĭt
P. [Fī-mŭs]	Fī-āmŭs	P. Factī sŭmŭs	Factī sīmŭs
[Fī-tĭs]	Fī-ātĭs	Factī estĭs	Factī sītĭs
Fī-unt	Fī-ant	Factī sunt	Factī sint
	2. Past-Imperfect.		*5. Past-Perfect.*
S. Fī-ēbam	Fī-ĕrem	S. Factŭs ĕram	Factŭs essem
Fī-ēbās	Fī-ĕrēs	Factŭs ĕrās	Factŭs essēs
Fī-ēbăt	Fī-ĕrĕt	Factŭs ĕrăt	Factŭs essĕt
P. Fī-ēbāmŭs	Fī-ĕrēmŭs	P. Factī ĕrāmŭs	Factī essēmŭs
Fī-ēbātĭs	Fī-ĕrētĭs	Factī ĕrātĭs	Factī essētĭs
Fī-ēbant	Fī-ĕrent	Factī ĕrant	Factī essent
	3. Future.		*6. Future-Perfect.*
S. Fī-am	(wanting.)	S. Factŭs ĕro	(wanting.)
Fī-ēs		Factŭs ĕrĭs	
Fī-ĕt		Factŭs ĕrĭt	
P. Fī-ēmŭs		P. Factī ĕrĭmŭs	
Fī-ētĭs		Factī ĕrĭtĭs	
Fī-ent		Factī ĕrunt	

IMPERATIVE.		
Present.	**Fī, fī-tŏ**	

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
		Perfect.	**Factŭs (ă, um)**
Imperfect.	**Fī-ĕrī**		
Perfect.	**Factum (am, um) essĕ**	Gerundive.	**Făciendŭs (ă, um)**
Future.	**Factum īrī**		

Obs. 1. Fīo is used as the Passive of făcio.
Obs. 2. The *i* in fīo is always long, except in fĭt and when not followed by **r.**
Obs. 3. The forms fīmŭs and fītĭs are doubtful.

o be unable.

ĕo, but are
ative non quĭs,

2. **Văpŭlo, văpŭlāvi,** *to be beaten,* is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of Verbĕro.

3. **Vĕneo, venīvi, vĕnĭtum** (*or* **vĕnum**), *to be sold,* is a compound of the supine vēnum and the verb eo, and is used as the passive of Vendo.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives,* because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in *form.* They are likewise called *Semideponents,* because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

, **văpulo,** *to be*
ation and con-

ŭde.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ect.

Factŭs sim
Factŭs sīs
Factŭs sĭt
Factĭ sīmŭs
Factĭ sītĭs
Factĭ sint

rfect.

Factŭs essem
Factŭs essēs
Factŭs essĕt
Factĭ essēmŭs
Factĭ essētĭs
Factĭ essent

erfect.

(wanting.)

ES.

ă, um)

ŭs (ă, um)

t followed by **r.**

Audeo, ausus sum, audĕre,	to dare, venture.
Fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre,	to trust.
Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre,	to rejoice.
Sŏleo, sŏlĭtus sum, sŏlēre,	to be accustomed.

Obs. The four following verbs use also the Perfect Participle Passive in an active sense : jūro, jūrātus, *having sworn ;* coeno, coenātus, *having dined ;* prandeo, pransus, *having breakfasted ;* pōto, pōtus, *having drunk.*

CHAPTER XX.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I.	**Coepī,**	*I began.*
II.	**Mĕmĭnī,**	*I remember.*
III.	**Ōdĭ,**	*I hate.*
IV.	**Nōvi,**	*I know.*

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses ; but the three latter have a present signification.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	**Coepī**	**Mĕmĭnī**	**Ōdī**	**Nōvi**
Past-Perfect.	**Coepĕram**	**Mĕmĭnĕram**	**Ōdĕram**	**Nōveram**
Future-Perfect.	**Coepĕro**	**Mĕmĭnĕro**	**Ōdĕro**	**Nōvĕro**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	**Coepĕrim**	**Mĕmĭnĕrim**	**Ōdĕrim**	**Nōvĕrim**
Past-Perfect.	**Coepissem**	**Mĕmĭnissem**	**Ōdissem**	**Nōvissem**

IMPERATIVE.

Future.	(wanting.)	**Mĕmento**		(wanting.
		Mĕmentōtĕ		

INFINITIVE.

Perfect.	**Coepissĕ**	**Mĕmĭnissĕ**	**Ōdissĕ**	**Nōvisse**

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	**Coeptūrŭs**	(wanting.)	**Ōsūrŭs**	

Obs. 1. Instead of coepi and its Tenses, the Passive coeptus sum, &c., is used before an Infinitive Passive : as, urbs aedĭfĭcārī coepta est, *the city began to be built.*

Obs. 2. *Novi* is properly the perfect of Nosco, *to learn to know.*

§ 121. V. Aio, *I say*, has only the following forms :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.			*Past-Imperfect.*
S. Aio	—		S. Aiēbam	—
Aĭs	Aiās		Aiēbās	—
Aĭt	Aiăt		Aiēbăt	—
P. —	—		P. Aiēbămŭs	—
—	—		Aiēbātĭs	—
Aiunt	Aiant		Aiēbant	—

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Aiens.

Obs. The form aisnĕ, *sayest thou!* is often contracted into ain'.

§ 122. VI. Inquam, *say I*, has only the following forms :—

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Inquam		*Past-Imperfect.*	Inquiēbam
	Inquĭs			Inquiēbās
	Inquĭt			Inquiēbăt
	Inquĭmŭs			Inquiēbāmŭs
	Inquĭtĭs			Inquiēbātĭs
	Inquĭunt			Inquiēbant
Future.	—		*Perfect.*	
	Inquiēs			Inquistī
	Inquiĕt			Inquĭt

IMPERATIVE.

| *Present.* | Inquĕ | | *Future.* | 2 *Pers.* Inquĭto |

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

§ 123. VII. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
	Present.		*Present.* S. Fārĕ	Fārī
Fātŭr	—			
	Future.		PARTICIPLES.	
Fāhŏr, fābĭtŭr	—		*Imperfect.* Fantĭs &c.	(without a Nom.)
	Perfect.		*Perfect.* Fātŭs (ĭ, um)	
Fātus sum &c.	Fātus sim &c.		*Gerundive.* Fandŭs (ă, um)	
	Past-Perfect.		SUPINE — Fātū.	
Fātŭs ĕram	Fātŭs essem		GERUND—Fandī &c.	

§ 124. VIII. Salvē, *hail!* is found in the *Imperat.* salvē, salvētĕ, salvēto; in the *Infin.* salvērĕ; and in the *Future* salvēbĭs.

IX. Ăvē (hăvē), *hail!* is found in the *Imperat.* ăvē, ăvētĕ, ăvēto; and in the *Infin.* ăvērĕ.

X. Ăpăgĕ, *begone!* (the only form).

XI. Cĕdo, *pl.* (cĕdĭtĕ) cettĕ, *give me, tell me,* are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. Quaeso, *I entreat,* quaesŭmŭs, *we entreat,* are the only forms used in this sense.

CHAPTER XXI.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

Dĕcĕt, dĕcuĭt, dĕcērĕ,	*it is seemly.*
Dēdĕcĕt, dēdĕcuĭt, dēdĕcērĕ,	*it is unseemly.*
Lĭbĕt, lĭbuĭt & lĭbĭtum est, lĭbērĕ,	*it pleases.*
Lĭçĕt, lĭcuĭt & lĭcĭtum est, lĭcērĕ,	*it is lawful.*
Lĭquĕt, lĭquērĕ,	*it is clear.*
Mĭsĕrĕt *or* mĭsĕrētŭr, mĭsĕrĭtum est, mĭsĕrērĕ.	*it excites pity.*
Ŏportĕt, ŏportuĭt, ŏportērĕ,	*it behoves.*
Pĭgĕt, pĭguĭt & pĭgĭtum est, pĭgērĕ,	*it vexes.*
Plăcĕt, plăcuĭt *or* plăcĭtum est, plăcērŏ,	*it pleases.*
Poenĭtĕt, poenĭtuĭt, poenĭtērĕ,	*it causes sorrow.*
Pŭdĕt, pŭduĭt *or* pŭdĭtum est, pŭdērĕ,	*it shames.*
Taedĕt, (pertaesum est,) taedērĕ,	*it disgusts.*

Obs. All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandĭnăt, 1,	*it hails.*
Ningĭt, ninxĭt, ningĕrĕ,	*it snows.*
Plŭĭt, plŭĭt *or* plŭvĭt, plŭĕrĕ,	*it rains.*

Tŏnăt, tŏnuĭt, tŏnārĕ,   *it thunders.*
Lūcescĭt, (illuxĭt,) lūcescĕrĕ,   *it becomes light.*
Vespĕrascĭt, vespĕrāvĭt, vespĕrascĕrĕ,   *evening approaches.*

Obs. Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper signifi-
cations are in certain senses used impersonally: as, accĭdĭt, *it happens;*
expĕdĭt, *it is advantageous,* &c.

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Parti-
ciples, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently pŭdĕt, for
example, has only the following forms:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Present.	Pŭdĕt	Pŭdeăt	
Past-Imperfect.	Pŭdēbăt	Pŭdērĕt	} Pŭdērĕ
Future.	Pŭdēbĭt		—
Perfect.	Pŭduĭt	Pŭduĕrĭt	
Past-Perfect.	Pŭduĕrăt	Pŭduissĕt	} Pŭduissĕ
Future-Perfect.	Pŭduĕrĭt		—

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the
Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses:

Pŭdĕt mē,   *it shames me,* or *I am ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt tē,   *it shames thee,* or *thou art ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt eum,   *it shames him,* or *he is ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt nōs,   *it shames us,* or *we are ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt vōs,   *it shames you,* or *you are ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt eōs,   *it shames them,* or *they are ashamed.*

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice
impersonally: as,

Currĭtŭr, ītŭr, ventum est &c.   (*They*) run, (*they*) go, (*they*) came, etc.

CHAPTER XXII.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and
Substantives, end in ē, ō, tĕr, ĭtŭs, tim. Their formation is
explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in ē, ō, tĕr, have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter
Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and
consequently ends in ius.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super-

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of
the latter into ē.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.		
		Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
doctus,	*learned,*	doctē	doctius	doctissĭmē
aeger,	*sick,*	aegrē (*with difficulty*)	aegrius	aegerrĭmē
fortis,	*brave,*	fortĭter	fortius	fortissĭmē
sĭmĭllis,	*like,*	sĭmĭlĭter	sĭmĭlius	sĭmillĭmē
ācĕr,	*keen,*	ācrĭter	ācrius	ācerrĭmē
fēlix,	*lucky,*	fēlīcĭter	fēlīcius	fēlīcissĭmē
prūdens,	*prudent,*	prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissĭmē

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Com-
parison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.		
		Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
bŏnus,	*good,*	bĕnĕ	mĕlius	optĭmē
mălus,	*bad,*	mălĕ	pējus	pessĭmē
multus,	*much,*	multum	plūs	plūrĭmum
magnus,	*great,*	——	măgis	maxĭmē
prŏpinquus,	*near,*	prŏpĕ	prŏpius	proxĭmē
(prŏ) prior,	*before,*	——	prius	prīmum & prīmō

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from
Adjectives, are compared :—

Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
diū,	*for a long time,*	diūtius	diūtissĭmē
nŭper,	*lately,*	——	nūperrĭmē
saepĕ,	*often,*	saepius	saepissĭmē
sĕcus,	*otherwise,*	sēcius	——
tempĕrī (tempŏrī),	*timely,*	tempĕrius	——

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Casès
of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns : as,

tempŏri, tempĕri,	from	tempus,	*seasonably* (see § 131).
grātīs (grātiīs),	„	grātia,	*for thanks,* i. e. *for nothing.*
ingrātiīs (ingrātīs),	„	ingrātia,	*without thanks, against any*
fŏrăs, fŏrīs,		fŏra (*obs.*) = fŏris,	*abroad.*　　[*one's will.*
noctū,	„	noctus (*obs.*) = nox,	*by night.*
dĭū,	old *abl.* of	dĭĕs,	*by day.**
perpĕram,	*acc. sing. f.* of	perpĕrus,	*wrongly.*

* In this sense only in the phrase noctu diuque (**rare**).

CHAPTER XXIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

§ 135. I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ăd,	to.	Ŏb,	on account of.
Adversŭs,	} opposite, towards.	Pĕnes,	in the power of.
Adversum,		Pĕr,	through.
Antĕ,	before.	Pōnĕ,	behind.
Apŭd,	near.	Post,	after.
Circā, circum,	around.	Praetĕr,	beside.
Circĭtĕr,	about.	Prŏpĕ,	near.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of	Proptĕr,	on account of.
Contrā,	against.	Sĕcundum,	following, along, in accordance with.
Ergā,	towards (of the		
Extrā,	outside of. [mind)	Suprā,	above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	across.
Intĕr,	between, among.	Ultrā,	on the farther side of.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versŭs,	} towards.
Juxtā,	hard by, beside.	Versum,	

Obs. Versŭs is always placed *after* the Accusative: as, Rōmam versŭs, *towards Rome.*

§ 136. II. *With the Ablative alone.*

A, ăb, *or* abs,	by or *from.*	Ex *or* ē,	out of.
Absquĕ (rare),	without.	Prae,	before.
Cōram,	in the presence of.	Prō,	in front of, before.
Cum,	with.	Sĭnĕ,	without.
Dē,	down from, from.	Tĕnŭs,	reaching to, as far as.

Obs. 1. *Ab* is used before vowels and *h;* both *ā* and *ăb* before consonants; *abs* very seldom except in the phrase *abs te.*

Obs. 2. *Ex* is used before vowels and *h;* both *ex* and *ē* before consonants.

Obs. 3. *Tĕnŭs* is always placed after the Ablative: as, pectŏrĕ tĕnŭs, *as far as the breast.*

§ 137. III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

In,	in, into.	Sŭpĕr,	over.
Sŭb,	up to, under.	Subtĕr,	under.

Clam, *without the knowledge of.*

In and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

§ 138. *Obs.* 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antĕ, clam, cōram, contrā, post, praetĕr, propter.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the Preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, allŏquor from ad and lŏquor.

Ab, abs. *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a :* as, ā-moveo, ā-věho. *Ab* becomes *au* in au-fěro, au-fūgio. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only : as, abs-cēdo, abs-tĭneo.

Ad remains unchanged before *d, j, m, v :* as, ad-do, ad-jăceo, ad-mĭror, ad-věho. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, ac-cēdo, af-fěro, ag-gěro, ap-pōno, ac-quĭro, as-sisto, as-sūmo. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn :* as, a-spĭcio, a-gnosco.

Com (instead of **cum**) remains unchanged before the labials *p, b, m :* as, com-pŏ‥, com-bĭbo, com-mitto. The *m* is assimilated before *l, n, r :* as, col-lĭgo, con-necto, cor-rĭpio. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants : as, con-fěro, con-gěro, con-trăho. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h :* as, co-ălesco, co-eo, co-haereo.

Ex remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c, p, q, s, t :* as, ex-eo, ex-cĭpio, ex-pōno, ex-quĭro, ex-solvo, ex-trăho. The *x* is assimilated before *f :* as, ef-fěro. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, ē-lĭgo, ē-jĭcio.

In becomes *im* before the labials *p, b, m :* as, im-pōno, im-buo, im-mitto. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r :* as, il-lūdo, ir-rumpo. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

Inter undergoes assimilation only in the verb intel-lĭgo and its derivatives.

Ob undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, p :* as, oc-curro, of-fěro, og-gěro, op-pōno.

Per undergoes assimilation only in pel-lĭcio and its derivatives.

Sub undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, m, p,* and often before *r :* as, suc-curro, suf-fĭcio, sug-gěro, sum-mitto, sup-pōno, sur-rĭpio.

Trans is frequently shortened into trā: as, trā-dūco, trā-jĭcio.

Obs. 3. *Inseparable Prepositions* occur only in composition.

Amb, *around :* as, amb-io, *to go around ;* amb-ĭgo, *to wander around.* The *b* is dropped before *p :* as, am-pŭto, *to cut around* or *away ;* am-plector, *to twine around* or *embrace.* *Amb* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f :* as, an-ceps, *two-headed ;* an-quĭro, *to seek around ;* an-fractus, *a bending.*

Dis or **di,** *in different directions :* as, dis-pōno, *to set in different parts ;* dĭ-rĭpio, *to tear in pieces.* Before *f, dis* becomes *dif :* as, dif-fundo, *to pour in different directions.*

Rĕ or **rĕd,** *back :* as, rĕ-mitto, *to send back ;* rĕd-eo, *to go back.*

Sē, *aside :* as, sē-dūco, *to lead aside ;* sē-cūrus, *free from care.*

CHAPTER XXIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes :

I. CONNECTIVE.

Ĕt, Atquĕ, āc, Quĕ,	} *and.*	Nĕquĕ, nĕc, Nēvĕ, neu, Sīvĕ, seu,	} *neither, nor.* *or if.*
Aut, Vĕl, vĕ,	} *either, or.*	Necnōn, Etiam, Quŏque,	} *also.*

Obs. 1. **Quĕ** and **vĕ** are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mărīquĕ, *by land and by sea;* plūs mĭnusvĕ, *more or less.* Such words are called enclitics.

Obs. 2. **Ac, vĕ, nĕc, neu, seu** are contractions respectively of atquĕ, vĕl, nĕquĕ, nēvĕ, sĕ.

Obs. 3. **Ac** is never used before vowels or *h :* atruĕ occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mŏdo (sōlum) .... sed (vērum) ĕtiam, *not only .... but also;* quum (tum) .... tum, *both .... and.*

II. ADVERSATIVE.

Sĕd, Autem, Ast, at,	} *but.*	Tămĕn, Vērum, vēro, Ĕnimvēro, Attămĕn,	*yet, nevertheless.* *but, indeed.* *but indeed.* *but yet.*
Atque,	*and yet.*		

III. CONDITIONAL.

Sī, Nĭsi, nī, Sin,	*if.* *if not.* *if not; but if.*	Dum, Mŏdŏ, Dummŏdo,	} *provided that.*

IV. CONCESSIVE.

Etsi, Ĕtiamsi, Tămetsi, Lĭcĕt, Quanquam	} *although.*	Quamvīs, Quum, Quĭdem, Ŭt,	*however much, al-although. [though.* *indeed.* *granting that, al-though.*

V. CAUSAL.

Quum, Quĭā, quŏd, Quŏniam, Quandŏquĭdem,	*whereas, since.* *because.* *since.* *seeing that.*	Nam, Ĕnim, Ĕtĕnim,	} *for.* *and in fact.*

VI. CONCLUSIVE.

Ergo, Idcirco, Ideo, Igĭtŭr,	}*therefore.*	Ĭtăquĕ, Quocircă, Quārē, Quāproptĕr,	}*and so, accordingly.* }*wherefore.*

VII. FINAL.

Ŭt, Quō,	}*that, in order that.*		
Quĭn, Quŏmĭnŭs,	}*that not.*	Nē, Nēvĕ, neu,	*that not, lest.* *and that . . . not.*

VIII. TEMPORAL.

Antĕquam, Prĭusquam,	}*before that.*	Donec, Quoad,	}*so long as, until.*
Postquam,	*after that.*	Dum,	
	Sĭmulatque (ac),	*as soon as.*	

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntax*.

CHAPTER XXV.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes :—

1. Of surprise : ō! eu! eccĕ! păpae! ătat! etc.
2. Of grief : ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vae! etc.
3. Of joy : ĭo! ha! ēvoe! eu (eugĕ)! etc.
4. Of disgust : phuī! ăpăgĕ! etc.
5. Of adjuration : prŏ (proh)! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mehercle (mehercŭle, hercle, etc.), pol, ēdĕpol, mĕdĭusfĭdĭus, and the like.

APPENDIX A.

CHAPTER XXVI.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. 1. *Males, Mountains, Months, Winds,* and *Rivers* are *Masculine.*

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns,* and *Trees* are *Feminine.*

> *Obs.* In the case of some animals sex is disregarded : thus, ăquĭla, *eagle,* and vulpes, *fox,* are always *feminine ;* while lĕpus, *hare,* mus, *mouse,* and passer, *sparrow,* are always masculine. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. Indeclinable Substantives, as,

<div align="center">Fās, nĕfās, nĭhĭl, instăr,</div>

are *Neuter.*

fās,	*permitted by heaven.*	nĭhĭl,	*nothing.*
nĕfās,	*not permitted by heaven.*	instăr,	*resemblance.*

4. Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as,

<div align="center">Cīvis, conjux, săcerdōs, testis</div>

are *Common.*

cīvis,	*a citizen* (male or female).	săcerdōs,	*a priest* or *priestess.*
conjux,	*a husband* or *wife.*	testis,	*a witness* (male or female).

SPECIAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

§ 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION

Principal Rule.

A and ē are Feminine,
As and ēs are Masculine.

Exceptions.

1. Names of Males in **a** are Masculine : as,
    scrïba,   *a clerk.*
    nauta,   *a sailor.*
    incŏla,   *an inhabitant.*

2. Most Rivers in **a** are Masculine (§ 141, 1) : as,
    Addua, *the Adda.*

Garumna, *the Garonne.*
Sĕquăna, *the Seine.*
Also *Hādria*, the Adriatic Sea.

But the following are Feminine :
    Albŭla, *ancient name of Tiber.*
    Allia, in Latium.
    Matrŏna, *the Marne.*

---

§ 143.   II. SECOND DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

Us and **er** are Masculine,
Um is Neuter.

Exceptions.

1. *Trees* and *Towns* in **us** follow the general rule, and are Feminine (see § 141, 2) : as,
    ulmus,   *an elm-tree.*
    Cŏrinthus, *Corinth.*

2. The following are also Feminine :
    alvus,   *the belly.*
    cŏlus,   *a distaff.*
    hŭmus,   *the ground.*
    ʋannus,   *a winnowing fan.*

And some Greek words : as,
    mĕthŏdus,   *method.*
    arctos,   *the constellation Bear.*
    carbăsus,   *fine flax.*

3. The following are Neuter :
    vīrus,   *poison.*
    pĕlăgus,   *the sea.*
    vulgus,   *the common people.*

Obs. *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.

---

§ 144.   III. THIRD DECLENSION.

Preliminary Rules.

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions : thus, păter, *a father ;* Tĭbĕris, *the Tiber ;* Libs, *a S. W. wind,* are Masculine : while mŭlier, *a woman ;* sŏror, *a sister ;* Vĕnus, *the goddess of beauty and grace,* are Feminine.

2. All *Abstract* Substantives derived from Adjectives

(sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting *qualities*, are Feminine : as,

hŭmĭlĭtas,	*lowness, humility,*	from	hŭmĭlis.
suāvĭtas,	*sweetness,*	„	suāvis.
altĭtūdo,	*height,*	„	altus.
fortĭtūdo,	*bravery,*	„	fortis.
virtūs,	*manliness, virtue,*	„	vir.

3. Substantives in **io** (tio, sio), derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine : as,

expugnātio,	*taking by storm,*	from	expugno.
mūnītio,	*the act of fortifying,*	„	mūnio.
dēcessio,	*departure,*	„	dēcēdo.
largītio,	*bribery,*	„	largior.
ŏpīnio,	*thinking, opinion,*	„	ŏpīnor.
contāgio,	*touching, contagion,*	„	contango (root TAG).

Obs. 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as rĕgio, *a district* (from rĕgo) ; lĕgio, *a legion* (from lĕgo).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a *permanent* action or condition, in *go* and *do :* as,

prūrīgo,	*itching,*	from	prūrio.
cŭpīdo,	*a desire, passion,*	„	cŭpio.
vertīgo,	*giddiness,*	„	verto.

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

First Principal Rule (Masculine).

or (ōris), os, and er,

...s, increasing *short* in Genitive,

are *Masculine.*—EXAMPLES : Leo, ōnis, *a lion ;* dŏlŏr, ōris, *pain ;* flōs, flōris, *a flower ;* ansĕr, ĕris, *a goose ;* pēs, pĕdis, *a foot.*

Exceptions

1. In **o.**

Feminine are **do, go, io,**
To these add **căro, ĕcho,**
But Masculine are **harpăgo,**
Ordo, cardo, s**cīpio,**

Stellio, septentrio,
Margo, lĭgo, pŭgio,
Tĭtio, păpĭlio,
Unio, curcŭlio,
Lastly vespertīlio.

căro,	carnis,	*flesh.*
ĕcho,	ĕchūs,	*an echo.*
harpăgo,	ōnis,	*a grappling-hook.*
ordo,	ĭnis,	*a row.*
cardo,	ĭnis,	*a hinge.*
scīpio,	ōnis,	*a staff.*
stellio,	ōnis,	*a lizard.*
septentrio,	ōnis.	*the north.*

margo,	ĭnis,	*a border or edge.*
lĭgo,	ōnis,	*a spade.*
pŭgio,	ōnis,	*a dagger.*
tĭtio,	ōnis,	*a fire-brand.*
păpĭlio,	ōnis,	*a butterfly.*
ūnio,	ōnis,	*a pearl.*
curcŭlio,	ōnis,	*a weevil.*
vespertīlio,	ōnis,	*a bat.*

2. In **or**.
  Neuter Nouns which end in **or**
  Are only four :

Marmor, aequor, ădor, cŏr.
Fēmĭnĭni gĕnĕris
Is only arbor (arbŏris).

marmor,	ŏris,	marble.
aequor,	ŏris,	the level surface of the sea.

ădor,	ŏris,	spelt.
cor,	cordis,	the heart.
arbor,	ŏris,	a tree.

3. In **os**.
  Feminine are cōs and dōs.

Neuter Nouns are ŏs and ōs.

cōs,	cōtis,	a whetstone.
dōs,	dōtis,	a dowry.

ŏs,	ossis,	a bone.
ōs,	ōris,	the mouth.

4. In **er**.
  Many Neuters end in **er**:
  Vĕr, cădāver, ĭter, tūber,
  Cĭcer, pĭper, sĭser, ūber,

Zingĭber, păpāver, sūber,
Acer, sĭler, verber, spinther.
Feminine is only linter.

vĕr,	vĕris,	the spring.
cădāver,	ŏris,	a corpse.
ĭter,	ĭtĭnĕris,	a journey.
tūber,	ŏris,	a swelling.
cĭcer,	ŏris,	the chick-pea.
pĭper,	ŏris,	pepper.
sĭser,	ŏris,	a plant (skirret).
ūber,	ŏris,	an udder.

zingĭber,	ŏris,	ginger.
păpāver,	ŏris,	the poppy.
sūber,	ŏris,	the cork-tree.
ăcer,	ŏris,	the maple.
sĭler,	ŏris,	a withy.
verber,	ŏris,	a whip, scourge.
spinther,	ŏris,	a kind of bracelet.
linter,	tris (f.),	a wherry.

5. In **es**, increasing in the Genitive.
  Feminine are rĕquiēs,

Quiēs, mercēs, mergĕs, tĕgĕs,
Compes, inquiēs, and sĕgĕs.

quiēs,	ētis,	}rest.
rĕquiēs,	ētis,	
inquiēs,	ētis,	restlessness.
mercēs,	ēdis,	wages.

mergĕs,	ĭtis,	a sheaf of corn.
tĕgĕs,	ĕtis,	a mat.
compes,	ĕdis,	a fetter.
sĕgĕs,	ĕtis,	standing corn.

§ 145. *Second Principal Rule (Feminine)*.

X, as, aus, and is,
S preceded by a consonant,
Es not increasing in Genitive,

are *Feminine*.—EXAMPLES : Pax, pācis, *peace*; lībertās, ātis, *liberty*; laus, laudis, *praise*; nāvis, is, *a ship*; urbs, urbis, *a city*; nūbēs, is, *a cloud*.

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

6"
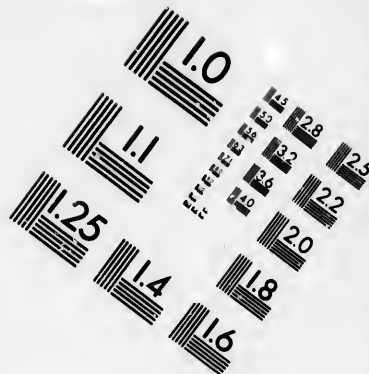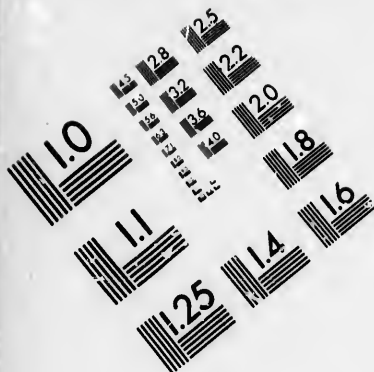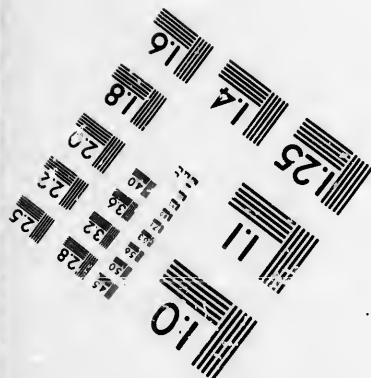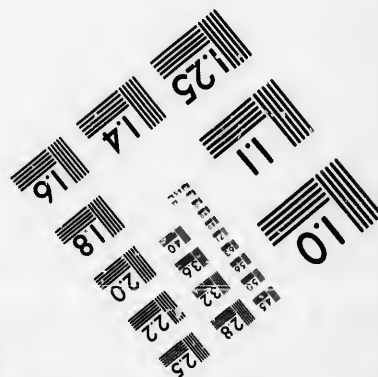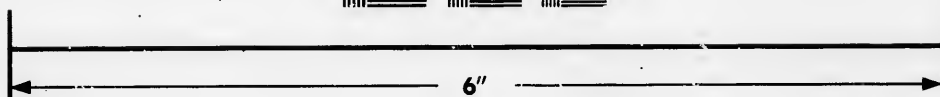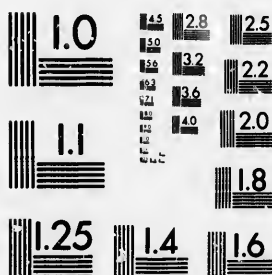
Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

Exceptions.

1. In x.

Masculine are words in **ex** :
Feminine alone are *lex*,
Sŭpellex, cărex, īlex, nex,

Masculine are *trădux, călix,*
Phoenix too, as well as *fornix.*

lex,	lēgis,	*a law.*
sŭpellex,	lectĭlis,	*furniture.*
cărex,	ĭcis,	*a kind of rush.*
īlex,	ĭcis,	*the scarlet oak.*
nex,	nĕcis,	*violent death.*

trădux,	ŭcis,	*a vine-branch.*
călix,	ĭcis,	*a cup.*
phoenix,	īcis,	*a fabulous bird.*
fornix,	ĭcis,	*an arch.*

2. In as.

Six Masculīna end in **as** :
As (assis), măs, and *ĕlĕphăs,*
Văs (vădis), gĭgăs, ădămăs.

The Neuter Nouns which end
in **as**
Are *Văs (văsis), făs* and *nĕfăs.*

ăs,	assis,	*a Roman coin.*
măs,	măris,	*a male.*
ĕlĕphăs,	antis,	*an elephant.*
văs,	vădis,	*a surety.*
gĭgăs,	antis,	*a giant.*

ădămăs,	antis,	*a diamond.*
văs,	văsis,	*a vessel.*
făs (indecl.),		*permitted by heaven.*
nĕfăs (indecl.),		*not permitted by heaven.*

3. In is.

Many Nouns which end in **is**
Are Masculīni gĕnĕris :
Pānis, piscis, crīnis, fīnis,
Ignis, lăpis, pulvis, cĭnis,
Orbis, amnis, and *cănālis,*
Sanguis, unguis, glīs, annālis,

Fascis, axis, fūnis, ensis,
Fustis, vectis, vōmis, mensis,
Vermis, torris, cŭcŭmis,
Postis, follis, mūgĭlis,
Cassis, caulis, callis, collis,
Sentis, torquis, pēnis, pollis.

pānis,	is,	*bread.*
piscis,	is,	*a fish.*
crīnis,	is,	*hair.*
fīnis,	is,	*an end.*
ignis,	is,	*fire.*
lăpis,	ĭdis,	*a stone.*
pulvis,	ĕris,	*dust.*
cĭnis,	ĕris,	*ashes.*
orbis,	is,	*a circle.*
amnis,	is,	*a river.*
cănālis,	is,	*a conduit.*
sanguis,	ĭnis,	*blood.*
unguis,	is,	*a finger- or toe-nail.*
glīs,	īris,	*a dormouse.*
annālis (usu. plur.),		*a year-book.*
fascis,	is,	*a bundle.*
axis,	is,	*an axle.*
fūnis,	is,	*a rope.*
ensis,	is,	*a sword.*

fustis,	is,	*a cudgel.*
vectis,	is,	*a lever.*
vōmis, (more freq. vōmer) ŏris,		*a ploughshare.*
mensis,	is,	*a month.*
vermis,	is,	*a worm.*
torris,	is,	*a firebrand.*
cŭcŭmis, is, and ĕris,		*a cucumber.*
postis,	is,	*a doorpost.*
follis,	is,	*a pair of bellows.*
mūgĭlis (usu. mūgil),		*a mullet.*
cassis (plur. ium),		*a net.*
caulis,	is,	*a stalk.*
callis,	is,	*a path.*
collis,	is,	*a hill.*
sentis,	is,	*a bramble.*
torquis (also es), is,		*a chain for the neck*
pēnis,	is,	*a tail.* [neck
pollis,	ĭnis,	*fine flour, meal.*

4. In **s** preceded by a consonant:
Masculine are *pons* and *fons*, | *Adeps, rŭdens, ŏriens,*
Hydrops, torrens, gryps, & *mons,* | *Dens* and *trĭdens, occĭdens.*

pons,	tis,	*a bridge.*		ădeps,	ĭpis,	*fat.*
fons,	tis,	*a fountain.*		rŭdens,	entis,	*a cable.*
hydrops,	ŏpis,	*dropsy.*		ŏriens,	tis,	*the east.*
torrens,	tis,	*a torrent.*		dens,	tis,	*a tooth.*
gryps,	grўphis,	*a griffin.*		trĭdens,	tis,	*a trident.*
mons,	tis,	*a mountain.*		occĭdens,	tis,	*the west.*

5. In **ēs**.
Masculines which end in **ēs** | verrēs, is, *a boar-pig.*
Are *verrēs* and *ăcīnăcēs.* | ăcīnăcēs, is, *a scimitar.*

§ 146. *Third Principal Rule (Neuter).*

A, e, and c,
L, n, and t,
Ar, ur, and us,

are *Neuter.*—EXAMPLES : Poēmă, *ătis, a poem* ; mărĕ, is, *the sea* ; lac, lactis, *milk* ; ănĭmăl, ālis, *an animal* ; nōmĕn, ĭnis, *a name* ; căpŭt, căpĭtis, *a head* ; fulgŭr, ŭris, *lightning* ; corpŭs, ŏris, *a body*

Exceptions.

1. In **l**.
Masculines in **l** are *mūgĭl*, | mūgil, lis, *a mullet.* | săl, sālis, *salt.*
Sōl and *consŭl, săl* and *pŭgĭl.* | sōl, sōlis, *the sun.* | pŭgil, lis, *a boxer.*
| consŭl, lis, *a consul.* |

2. In **n**.
Masculines in **n** are *rēn*, | rēn, rēnis (usu. in pl.), *the kidney.*
splēn, | splēn, ēnis, *the spleen.*
Pectĕn, liēn, attăgēn. | pectĕn, ĭnis, *a comb.*
| liēn, ēnis, *the spleen.*
| attăgen, ēnis, *a heathcock.*

3. In **ur**.
Masculines in **ur** are *furfur*, | furfur, ŭris, *bran.* | fūr, ŭris, *a thief.*
Astur, vultur, fūr, and *turtur.* | astur, ŭris, *a hawk.* | turtur, ŭris, *a turtle-dove.*
| vultur, ŭris, *a vulture.*

4. In **us**.
The Masculines which end in **us** | lĕpus, ŏris, *a hare.*
Are *lĕpus (lĕpŏris)* and *mūs.* | mūs, mūris, *a mouse.*

5. In **us**.

The Feminines which end in **us** | Sĕnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sălūs,
Are Jŭventūs, virtūs, servītūs, | Add pĕcŭs (pĕcŭdis) and pălūs.

jŭventūs,	ūtis,	*youth.*		incūs,	ūdis,	*an anvil.*
virtūs,	ūtis,	*virtue.*		sălūs,	ūtis,	*safety.*
servītūs,	ūtis,	*slavery.*		pĕcŭs,	ŭdis,	*cuttle.*
sĕnectūs,	ūtis,	*old-age.*		pălūs,	ūdis,	*a marsh.*
tellūs,	ūris	*the earth.*				

§ 147. IV. Fourth Declension.

Principal Rule.

Us is Masculine.
U is Neuter.

Exceptions.

Feminines which end in **us**: | Dŏmus, nŭrus, socrus, ănus,
Trĭbus, ăcus, portĭcus, | Idūs (idŭŭm) and mănus.

trĭbus,	*a tribe* (a division of the Roman people).
ăcus,	*a needle.*
portĭcus,	*a portico.*
dŏmus,	*a house.*
nŭrus,	*a daughter-in-law.*

socrus,	*a mother-in-law.*
ănus,	*an old-woman.*
Idūs (*pl.*),	*the Ides* (a division of the Roman month).
mănŭs,	*a hand.*

§ 148. V. Fifth Declension.

Rule.

All are Feminine except *dies* (*mĕrĭdies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXVII.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in āvi, ātum: as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love*.   The following are exceptions:—

1.	Crĕpo,	crĕpui,	crĕpĭtum,	crĕpāre,	*to creak.*
2.	Cŭbo,	cŭbui,	cŭbĭtum,	cŭbāre,	*to lie.*
3.	Dŏmo,	dŏmui,	dŏmĭtum,	dŏmāre,	*to tame.*
4.	Sŏno,	sŏnui,	sŏnĭtum,	sŏnāre,	*to sound.*
5.	Vĕto,	vĕtui,	vĕtĭtum,	vĕtāre,	*to forbid.*
6.	Tŏno,	tŏnui,	—	tŏnāre,	*to thunder.*
7.	Mĭco,	mĭcŭi,	—	mĭcāre.	*to glitter.*
8.	Plĭco,	{ plĭcui, plĭcāvi,	plĭcĭtum, plĭcātum,	plĭcāre,	*to fold.*
9.	Frĭco,	frĭcui,	{ frĭcātum, frictum,	frĭcāre,	*to rub.*
10.	Sĕco,	sĕcui,	sectum,	sĕcāre,	*to cut.*
11.	{ Nĕco (regular). Enĕco,	{ ēnĕcui, ēnĕcāvi,	ēnectum, ēnĕcātum,	ēnĕcāre,	*to kill.*
12.	Jŭvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jŭvāre,	*to assist.*
13.	Lăvo,	lāvi,	{ lăvātum, lautum, lōtum,	lăvāre,	*to wash.*
14.	Do,	dĕdi,	dătum,	dăre,	*to give.*
15.	Sto,	stĕti,	stătum,	stāre,	*to stand.*

Obs. 1. *Do* in composition with prepositions of *two* syllables is the same : as,

circumdo,   circumdĕdi,   circumdătum,   circumdăre,   *to surround.*

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable it is of the Third Conjugation : as,

addo,   addĭdi,   addĭtum,   addĕre,   *to put to to add.*

See § 159, No. 18.

Obs. 2. *Sto* in composition with prepositions of *two* syllables is the same : as,

circumsto,   circumstĕti,   circumstāre,   *to surround.*

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable the perfect is *stĭti* :

adsto,   adstĭti,   adstāre,   *to stand near.*

II. The Second Conjugation.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in **uī** and **ĭtum**: as, mŏneo, mŏnui, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise.* The following are exceptions:

1. *Perfect*—**uĭ.** *Supine*—**tum.**

1.	Dŏceo,	dŏcui,	doctum,	dŏcēre,	*to teach.*
2.	Tĕneo,	tĕnui,	tentum,	tĕnēre,	*to hold.*
3.	Misceo,	miscui,	{ mixtum, mistum,	miscēre,	*to mix.*
4.	Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	*to roast.*
5.	Sorbeo,	{ sorbui, sorpsi,	—	sorbēre,	*to suck up.*
6.	Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	*to assess, think.*

§ 151.—2. *Perfect*—**ēvi.** *Supine*—**ētum.**

1.	Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	*to blot out, destroy.*
2.	Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	*to weep.*
3.	Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	*to spin.*
4.	Pleo only in composition.				
	Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	*to fill up.*
	Oleo only in composition.				
	Abŏleo,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlēre,	*to abolish.*
	Adŏleo,	ădŏlēvi,	adultum,	—	*to grow up.*
5.	(Adolesco,)				
	Exŏleo,	exŏlēvi,	exŏlētum,	—	*to grow old.*
	(Exolesco,)				
	Obsŏleo,	obsolēvi,	obsŏlētum,	—	*to grow out of use*
	(Obsolesco,)				

To this class may be added:

6.	Cieo,	cīvi,	cĭtum,	ciēre,	*to stir.*

§ 152.—3. *Perfect*—**i (di).** *Supine*—**sum.**

1.	Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	*to breakfast.*
2.	Sĕdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sĕdēre,	*to sit.*
3.	Vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	vĭdēre,	*to see.*
4.	Strīdeo,	strīdi,	—	strīdēre,	*to creak.*

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

5.	Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	*to bite.*
6.	Pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	*to hang.*
7.	Spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	*to promise.*
8.	Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	*to shear.*

§ 153.—4. *Perfect*—**i (vi).** *Supine*—**tum.**

1.	Căveo,	căvi,	cautum,	căvēre,	*to guard one's self.*
2.	Făveo,	făvi,	fautum,	făvēre,	*to favour.*
3.	Fŏveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fŏvēre,	*to cherish.*
4.	Mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mŏvēre,	*to move.*
5.	Vŏveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vŏvēre,	*to vow.*

§ 150.

§ 157.   PERFECTS AND SUPINES.   **91**

[Left margin — partial text from facing page:]

econd Con-
eo, mŏnui,
xceptions :

o teach.
o hold.
o mix.
o roast.
o suck up.
assess, think.

out, destroy.
p.

up.

lish.
w up.
w old.

w out of use

stir.

breakfast.
sit.
see.
creak.

bite.
hang.
promise.
shear.

one's self.
r.
h.

Without Supine.

6.	Păveo,	păvi,	—	păvēre,	to fear.
7.	Ferveo,	{fervi, / ferbui,	—	fervēre,	to boil.
8.	Connīveo,	{eonnīvi, / eonnixi,	—	connīvēre,	to wink.

§ 154.—5. *Perfect*—**si**. Supine—**tum** and **sum**.

1.	Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	to increase.
2.	Indalgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	to indulge.
3.	Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	to twist.
4.	Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	to blaze.
5.	Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	to stick.
6.	Jŭbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jŭbēre,	to order.
7.	Măneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mănēre,	to remain.
8.	Muleeo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre	to stroke.
9.	Mulgeo,	mulsi,	muletum,	mulgēre,	to milk.
10.	Rĭdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	to laugh.
11.	Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	to advise.
12.	Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
13.	Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	}to be cold.
14.	Frigeo,	frixi,	—	frīgēre,	
15.	Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre	to shine.
16.	Lūeeo,	luxi,	—	lūeēre,	to be light.
17.	Lŭgeo,	luxi,	—	lŭgēre,	to grieve.
18.	Turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	to swell.
19.	Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	to press.

§ 155. *Semi-Deponents* or *Neuter-Passives*.

1.	Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	to dare.
2.	Gaudeo,	gāvisus sum,	—	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
3.	Sŏleo,	sŏlĭtus sum,	—	sŏlēre,	to be accustomed.

Obs. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines ; and others have neither Perfects nor Supines.

III.   THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* **B, P.**

(a.) *Perfect*—**si**.   *Supine*—**tum**.

NOTE.—B becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1.	Carpo	carpsi,	carptum,	earpěre,	to pluck.
2.	Glŭbo	glupsi,	gluptum,	glŭběre,	to peel.
3.	Nūbo	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūběre,	to marry.

4.	Repo,	repsi,	reptum,	rĕpĕre,	to creep..
5.	Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	to scratch.
6.	Scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scrībĕre,	to write.
7.	Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	to crawl.

(b.) Perfect—ui. Supine—tum or ĭtum.

8.	Răp-io,	răpui,	raptum,	răpĕre,	to seize.
9.	{Cumbo, {Incumbo,	incŭbui,	incŭbĭtum,	incumbĕre,	to lie upon.
10.	Strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	strĕpĕre,	to make a noise.

(c.) Perfect—i. Supine—tum, or wanting.

11.	Căp-io,	cēpi,	captum,	căpĕre,	to take.
12.	Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	to burst.
13.	Bĭbo,	bĭbi,	—	bĭbĕre,	to drink.
14.	Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambĕre,	to lick.
15.	Scăbo,	scăbi,	—	scăbĕre,	to scratch.

(d.) Perfect—īvi. Supine—ītum, or wanting.

16.	Cŭp-io,	cŭpīvi,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕre,	to desire.
17.	Săp-io,	{săpīvi, or} {săpii,}	—	săpĕre,	to taste.

§ 158.—2. Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.

(a.) Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—*Cs*, *hs*, and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

1.	Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcĕre,	to say.
2.	Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	to lead.
3.	Cŏquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cŏquĕre,	to cook.
4.	Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	to surround.
5.	{(Flīgo, not used.) {Afflīgo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	afflīgĕre,	to strike. to strike to the ground.
6.	Frīgo,	frixi,	frictum,} frixum, }	frīgĕre,	to parch, to fry.
7.	Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	to join.
8.	Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	to lick.
9.	{(Mungo, not used.) {ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	to blow the nose
10.	Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	to beat.
11.	Rĕgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rĕgĕre,	to direct, rule.
12.	{(Spĕcio, very seldom used.) {Aspĭc-io,	aspexi,	aspectum,	aspĭcĕre,	to behold.
13.	Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgĕre,	to suck.
14.	Tĕgo,	texi,	tectum,	tĕgĕre,	to cover.
15.	{Tingo, {Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{tingĕre, {tinguĕre,	to dip.
16.	{Ungo, {Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	{ungĕre, {unguĕre,	to anoint.

§ 15δ.

o creep.
o scratch.
o write.
o crawl.

seize.

lie upon.
make a noise.

take.
burst.
drink.
lick.
scratch.

desire.

taste.

gutturals

t.

say.
lead.
cook.
surround.
strike.
strike to the ground.

parch, to fry.

join.
lick.

blow the nose
beat.
direct, rule.

behold.
suck.
cover.

dip.

noint.

17.	{(Stinguo, not used.)				
	Exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguĕre,	*to extinguish.*
18.	Traho,	traxi,	tractum,	trăhĕre,	*to drag.*
19.	Věho,	vexi,	vectum,	věhĕre,	*to carry.*
20.	{(Lăc-io, very seldom used.)				
	Allĭc-io,	allexi,	allectum,	allĭcĕre,	*to entice.*
21.	Ango,	anxi,	—	angĕre,	*to vex.*
22.	Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningĕre,	*to snow.*
23.	Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	fingĕre,	*to form, to invent.*
24.	Mingo,	minxi,	minctum,	mingĕre,	*to make water.*
25.	Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	*to paint.*
26.	Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringĕre,	*to grasp.*

(b.) *Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**sum** and **xum**.

27.	Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	*to sink.*
28.	Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	*to scatter.*
29.	Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	*to wipe.*
30.	Fīgo,	fixi,	fixum,	fīgĕre,	*to fix.*
31.	Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	*to bend.*
32.	Necto,	nexi (*and*-ui),	nexum,	nectĕre,	*to bind.*
33.	Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	*to comb.*
34.	Plecto,	plexi (*and*-ui),	plexum,	plectĕre,	*to plait.*

(c.) *Perfect*—**i** (*with Reduplication*). *Supine*—**sum** *and* **tum**.

35.	Pango,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	*to fix.*
36.	Parco,	{pĕperci, parsi,	{parcitum, parsum,	parcĕre,	*to spare.*
37.	Pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	*to prick.*
38.	Tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	*to touch.*
39.	Disco,	dĭdĭci,	—	discĕre,	*to learn.*
40.	Posco,	pŏposci,	—	poscĕre,	*to demand.*

(d.) *Perfect*—**i** (*with vowel of Stem lengthened*).

41.	Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	ăgĕre,	*to do.*
42.	Făc-io,	fēci,	factum,	făcĕre,	*to make, to do.*
43.	Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	*to break.*
44.	Fŭg-io,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	fŭgĕre,	*to flee, to fly.*
45.	Īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	*to strike (a treaty)*
46.	Jăc-io,	jēci,	jactum,	jăcĕre,	*to throw.*
47.	Lĕgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	*to read.*
48.	Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum,)	linquĕre,	*to leave.*
49.	Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincĕre,	*to conquer.*

(e.) *Perfect*—**ui**. *Supine*—**tum**.

50.	Texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	*to weave.*

(f.) *Guttural Stem disguised.*

51.	Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluĕre,	*to flow.*
52.	Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	*to pile up.*
53.	Vīvo,	vixi,	victum,	vīvĕre,	*to live.*

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* D, T.

(a.) *Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**tum.**

NOTE—D and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

1.	Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudĕre,	to shut.
2.	Dīvĭdo,	dīvīsi,	dīvīsum,	dīvĭdĕre,	to divide.
3.	Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedĕre,	to strike, to injure
4.	Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdĕre,	to play.
5.	Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudĕre.	to clap the hands.
6.	Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādĕre,	to scrape.
7.	Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdĕre,	to gnaw.
8.	Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdĕre,	to thrust.
9.	{ Vādo,	—	—	vādĕre,	to go.
	{ Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādĕre,	to go against.
10.	Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēdĕre,	to yield.
11.	Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittĕre,	to send.
12.	Quăt-io,	—	quassum,	quătĕre,	to shake.

(b.) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

13	Cădo,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	cădĕre,	to fall.
14.	Caedo,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	caedĕre.	to strike.
15.	Pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	to hang, to weigh.
16.	Tendo,	tĕtendi,	{ tensum, tentum,	tendĕre,	to stretch.
17.	Tundo,	tŭtŭdi,	{ tunsum, tūsum,	tundĕre,	to beat.
18.	Do in composition,				to put.
	Abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abdĕre,	to put away, to hide.
	Addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	addĕre,	to put to, to add.
	Condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	condĕre,	to put together, to build, hide.
	Dēdo,	dēdĭdi,	dēdĭtum,	dēdĕre,	to put down, to surrender.
	Ēdo,	ēdĭdi,	ēdĭtum,	ēdĕre,	to put forth, to publish.
	Indo,	indĭdi,	indĭtum,	indĕre,	to put on.
	Perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perdĕre,	to ruin, to lose.
	Prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōdĕre,	to betray.
	Reddo,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	reddĕre,	to put back, to restore.
	Subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subdĕre,	to put under, to substitute.
	Trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trādĕre,	to put across, to deliver up.
	Crēdo,	crēdĭdi,	crēdĭtum,	crēdĕre,	to believe, trust.
	Vendo,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	vendĕre,	to sell.
19.	Sisto,	stĭti,	stătum,	sistĕre,	to cause to stand.

(c.) *Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**sum.**

20.	{ (Cando) Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendĕre,	to set on fire.
21.	Cūdo	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdĕre,	to hammer.
22.	Ĕdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ĕdĕre,	to eat.

char.ged into *s*.

ut.
ide.
ike, to injure
ay.
p the hands.
ape.
uw.
ust.

against.
ld.
d.
ke.

ke.
g, to weigh.
tch.

t.

away, to hide.
to, to add.
together, to
, hide.
down, to sur-
er.
forth, to pub-

on.
, to lose.
ay.
back, to re-

nder, to sub-
e.
across, to de-
up.
e, trust.

e to stand.

a fire.
ner.

23.	⎧(Fendo not used,				to strike.)
	⎪Défendo,	défeudi,	défensum,	défendĕre,	to ward off, to defend.
	⎩Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendĕre,	to strike against, to assault.
24.	Fŏdio,	fŏdi,	fossum,	fŏdĕre,	to dig.
25.	Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundĕre,	to pour.
26.	Maudo,	mandi,	mansum,	mandĕre,	to chew.
		(rare,)			
27.	Pando,	pandi,	⎧pausum, ⎨passum,	pandĕre,	to spread.
28.	Prĕhendo,	prĕhendi,	prĕhensum,	prĕhendĕre,	to grasp.
29.	Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandĕre,	to climb.
30.	⎧Strīdo, ⎨Strīdeo,	strīdi,	—	strīdĕre,	to creak.
31.	Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertĕre,	to turn.
32.	Findo,	fĭdi,	fissum,	findĕre,	to cleave.
33.	Scinuo,	scĭdi,	scissum,	scindĕre,	to tear.
34.	⎧Frendo, ⎨Frendeo,	— —	⎧fressum, ⎨frēsum,	frendĕre, —	to gnash the teeth.

(d.) Other Forms.

35.	Mĕto,	messui,	messum,	mĕtĕre,	to mow.
36.	Pĕto,	pĕtīvi or pĕtii,	pĕtītum,	pĕtĕre,	to seek.
37.	Sīdo,	sēdi (rarely sīdi),	—	sīdĕre,	to settle down.
38.	Sterto,	stertui.	—	stertĕre,	to snore.
39.	Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	—	fīdĕre,	to trust.

§ 160.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* **L, M, N.**

(a.) Perfect—**ui.** Supine—**Ĭtum** or **tum.**

1.	Alo,	ălui,	ălĭtum or altum,	ălĕre,	to nourish.
2.	Cŏlo,	cŏlui,	cultum,	cŏlĕre,	to till.
3.	Consŭlo,	consŭlui,	consultum,	consŭlĕre,	to consult.
4.	Mŏlo,	mŏlui,	mŏlĭtum,	mŏlĕre,	to grind.
5.	Occŭlo,	occŭlui,	occultum,	occŭlĕre,	to conceal.
6.	Vŏlo,	vŏlui,	—	velle,	to wish.
7.	Frĕmo,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	frĕmĕrc,	to roar.
8.	Gĕmo,	gĕmui,	gĕmĭtum,	gĕmĕre,	to groan.
9.	Trĕmo,	trĕmui,	—	trĕmĕrc,	to tremble.
10.	Vŏmo,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	vŏmĕre,	to vomit.
11.	Gigno,	gĕnui,	gignĕre,	gĕnĭtum,	to produce.

(b.) Perfect with Reduplication.

12.	Fallo,	fĕfelii,	falsum,	fallĕre,	to deceive.
13.	Pello,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	to drive.
14.	Căno,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cănĕre,	to sing.

7

(c.) Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

15.	Cŏmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cŏmĕre,	to adorn.
16.	Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	to take away.
17.	Prŏmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prŏmĕre,	to take out.
18.	Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	to take up.
19.	Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	to despise.

(d.) Other forms.

20.	Percello,	percŭli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	to strike down.
21.	Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallĕre,	to play on a stringed instrument.
22.	Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	to pluck.
23.	Tollo,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	tollĕre,	to raise up.
24.	Ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	to buy or take.
25.	Prĕmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prĕmĕre,	to press.
26.	Lĭno,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	lĭnĕre,	to smear.
27.	Sĭno,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	sĭnĕre,	to permit.

Obs. Cŏmo, dēmo, prŏmo, sūmo are compounds of con, dē, prŏ, sŭb, and ĕmo.

§ 161.— Verbs the Stems of which end in R.

1.	Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	to sift, to divide.
2.	Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernĕre,	to despise.
3.	Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	to strew.
4.	Gĕro,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	to carry.
5.	Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	to burn.
6.	Curro,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	currĕre,	to run.
7.	Fĕro,	tŭli,	lātum,	ferre,	to bear, carry.
8.	Păr-io,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	părĕre,	to produce.
9.	Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	to seek.
10.	Sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	to put in rows, to plait.
11.	Sĕro,	sēvi,	sătum,	sĕrĕre,	to sow.
12.	Tĕro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tĕrĕre,	to rub.
13.	Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrĕre,	to sweep.

§ 162.— Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.

1.	Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsĕre,	to knead.
2.	Pinso,	{pinsui, pinsi,	{pinsĭtum, pinsum,	pinsĕre,	to pound.
3.	Pīso,	—	pistum,	pīsĕre,	to pound.
4.	Vīso,	vīsi,	—	vīsĕre,	to visit.
5.	Pōno,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	pōnĕre,	to place.
6.	Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	to send for.
7.	Căpesso,	căpessīvi,	căpessītum,	căpessĕre,	to take in hand.
8.	Făcesso,	făcessi,	făcessītum,	făcessĕre,	to make, to cause.
9.	Lăcesso,	lăcessīvi,	lăcessītum,	lăcessĕre,	to provoke.

Obs. In pŏno the root is pŏs, the n being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses.

§ 163.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* **U, V.**

Perfect—i.   *Supine*—tum.

1.	Acuo,	ăcui,	ăcūtum,	ăcuĕre,	to sharpen.
2.	Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	to prove.
3.	Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	to soak.
4.	Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	to put on.
5.	Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	to put off.
6.	Mĭnuo,	mĭnui,	mĭnūtum,	mĭnuĕre,	to lessen.
7.	Rŭo,	rui,	rūtum,	ruĕre,	to rush.
8.	Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuĕre,	to spit.
9.	Stătuo,	stătui,	stătūtum,	stătuĕre,	to set up.
10.	Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suĕre,	to sew.
11.	Trĭbuo,	trĭbui,	trĭbūtum,	trĭbuĕre,	to distribute.
12.	Lăvo,	lāvi,	{lautum, {lōtum,	lăvĕre,	to wash.
13.	Solvo,	solvi,	sŏlūtum,	solvĕre,	to loosen.
14.	Volvo,	volvi,	vŏlūtum,	volvĕre,	to roll.
15.	Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruĕre,	to agree.
16.	Luo,	lui,	—	luĕre,	to atone.
	(Nuo,				to nod.)
17.	{ Abnuo,	abnui,	—	abnuĕre	to refuse.
	(Annuo,	annui,	—	annuĕre,	to assent.
18.	Mĕtuo,	mĕtui,	—	mĕtuĕre,	to fear.
19.	Pluit,	pluit or plŭvit,	—	pluĕre,	to rain.
20.	Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuĕre,	to sneeze.

Obs. In *fluo, struo, vivo,* the Stem ends in *c* or *g*. See § 158, Nos. 51, 52, 53.

§ 164.—*Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* **sco.**

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines : as, incălesco, incălui, incălescĕre, *to grow warm,* from căleo, călui, cālēre, *to be warm.* The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines :—

1.	Abŏlesco,	abŏlēvi,	abŏlĭtum,	abŏlescĕre,	to grow out of use.
2.	Adŏlesco,	adŏlēvi,	adultum,	adŏlescĕre,	to grow up.
3.	Exŏlesco,	exŏlēvi,	exŏlĭtum,	exŏlescĕre,	to grow old.
4.	Cŏălesco, (ălo)	cŏălui,	cŏălĭtum,	cŏălescĕre,	to grow together.
5.	Concŭpisco, (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi,	concŭpītum,	concŭpiscĕre,	to desire.
6.	Convălesco, (văleo)	convălui,	convălĭtum,	convălescĕre,	to grow strong.
7.	Exardesco, (ardeo)	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescĕre,	to take fire.

SM. L. G.

F

8. Invĕtĕrasco, invĕtĕrāvi, invĕtĕrātum, invĕtĕrascĕre, *to grow old.*
(invĕtĕro)
9. Obdormisco, obdormīvi, obdormītum, obdormiscĕre, *to fall asleep.*
(dormio)
10. Rĕvīvisco, rĕvixi, rĕvictum, rĕvīviscĕre, *to come to life*
(vīvo)   *again.*
11. Scisco,   scīvi,   scītum,   sciscĕre,   *to seek to know,*
(scio)   *to enact.*

Obs. Ăbŏlesco, ădŏlesco, exŏlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ŏleo, *to grow.*

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

1. Consĕnesco, consĕnui,   —   consĕnescĕre,   *to grow old.*
(sĕnex)
2. Ingrăvesco,   —   —   ingrăvescĕre,   *to grow heavy.*
(grăvis)
3. Jŭvenesco,   —   —   jŭvenescĕre,   *to grow young.*
(jŭvĕnis)
4. Mātūresco, mātūrui,   —   mātūrescĕre,   *to grow ripe.*
(mātūrus)
5. Obmūtesco, obmūtui,   —   obmūtescĕre,   *to grow dumb.*
(mūtus)

§ 167. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:

1. Cresco,   crēvi,   crētum,   crescĕre,   *to grow.*
2. Glisco,   —   —   gliscĕre,   *to swell.*
3. Hisco, (hio), —   —   hiscĕre,   *to gape.*
4. Nosco,   nōvi,   nōtum,   noscĕre,   *to learn, to know.*
5. Pasco,   pāvi,   pastum,   pascĕre,   *to feed.*
6. Quiesco,   quiēvi,   quiētum,   quiescĕre,   *to become quiet.*
7. Suesco,   suēvi,   suētum,   suescĕre,   *to grow accustomed.*

Obs. In *Nosco* the Perfect signifies *I know;* the Past-Perfect, *I knew.* The Stem is *gno:* hence in composition we have

Agnosco,   agnōvi,   agnĭtum,   agnoscĕre,   *to recognise.*
Cognosco,   cognōvi,   cognĭtum,   cognoscĕre,   *to learn, to know.*

IV. The Fourth Conjugation.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *īvi,* the Supine in *ītum:* as, audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *to hear.* The following are exceptions:

1. Farcio,   farsi,   {fartum,   farcīre,   *to cram.*
                   {(ferctum,)
2. Fulcio,   fulsi,   fultum,   fulcīre,   *to prop.*

to grow old.

to fall asleep.

to come to life
  again.
to seek to know,
  to enact.

solete verb ŏlĕo,

and Adjec-
es, or they

o grow old.

grow heavy.

grow young.

grow ripe.

grow dumb.

ived from
d as unde-

ow.
ell.
be.
rn, to know.
d.
ome quiet.
row accus-
med.
I kne v. The

gnise.
n, to know.

ends re-
audītum,

a.

3.	Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	to draw (water).
4.	Sancio,	sanxi,	{sancītum, sanctum,	sancīre,	to ratify.
5.	Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	to patch.
6.	Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	to feel, to think.
7.	Saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepīre,	to fence in.
8.	Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincīre,	to bind.
9.	Eo,	īvi,	ītum,	īre,	to go.
10.	Sălio,	sălui or sălii,	saltum,	sălīre,	to leap.
11.	Sĕpĕlio,	sĕpĕlīvi,	sĕpultum,	sĕpĕlīre,	to bury.
12.	Vĕnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vĕnīre,	to come.
13.	Amīcio,	{amīcui, amixi,	amictum.	amīcīre,	to clothe.
14.	Apĕrio,	ăpĕrui,	ăpertum,	ăpĕrīre,	to open.
15.	Opĕrio	ŏpĕrui,	ŏpertum,	ŏpĕrīre,	to cover.

V. DEPONENTS.

§ 169. *In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.*

§ 170. *Second Conjugation.*

1.	{Făteor, Confĭteor	fassus sum, confessus sum,	fătēri, confĭtēri,	to confess. to confess.
2.	Lĭceor,	lĭcĭtus sum,	lĭcēri,	to bid (at a sale).
3.	Mĕdeor,	—	mĕdēri,	to heal.
4.	Mĕreor	mĕrĭtus sum,	mĕrēri,	to earn, to deserve.
5.	Mĭsĕreor,	mĭsĕrĭtus sum or mĭsertus sum,	mĭsĕrēri,	to take pity on.
6.	Pollĭceor,	pollĭcĭtus sum,	pollĭcēri,	to promise.
7.	Reor,	rătus sum,	rēri,	to think.
8.	Tueor,	tuĭtus sum,	tuēri,	to look upon, pro-
9.	Vĕreor,	vĕrĭtus sum,	vĕrēri,	to fear. [tect.

§ 171. *Third Conjugation.*

1.	Fruor,	{(fructus sum), fruĭtus sum,	frui,	to enjoy.
2.	Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	to perform.
3.	Grădior,	gressus sum,	grădi,	to step.
4.	Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	to slip.
5.	Līquor,	(liquefactus sum),	līqui,	to melt.
6.	Lŏquor,	lŏcūtus sum,	lŏqui,	to speak.
7.	Mŏrior,	mortuus sum,	mŏri,	to die.
8.	Nitor,	{nixus sum, nīsus,	nīti,	to strain.
9.	Pătior,	passus sum,	păti,	to suffer.
10.	Quĕror,	questus sum,	quĕri,	to complain.
11.	Ringor,	—	ringi,	to show the teeth, to snarl.
12.	Sĕquor,	sĕcūtus sum,	sĕqui,	to follow.

F 2

13.	Utor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	*to use.*
14.	(Verto)			
	Rĕvertor,	(rĕversus sum),	rĕverti,	*to return.*
	(Plecto)			
15.	Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	*to embrace.*
	Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	
16.	Apiscor,	aptus sum,	ăpisci,	*to obtain.*
	Adĭpiscor,	ădeptus sum,	ădĭpisci,	*to obtain.*
17.	Commĭniscor,	commentus sum,	commĭnisci,	*to devise.*
18.	Rĕmĭniscor,	—	rĕmĭnisci,	*to remember.*
19.	Dēfĕtiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfĕtisci,	*to grow weary.*
20.	Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	*to wake up.*
21.	Īrascor,	—	īrasci,	*to be angry.*
22	Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	*to obtain by chance.*
23.	Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	*to be born.*
24.	Oblīviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	*to forget.*
25.	Păciscor,	pactus sum,	păcisci,	*to make an agree-ment.*
26.	Prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfectus sum,	prŏfĭcisci,	*to set out.*
27.	Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	*to avenge.*
28.	Vescor,	—	vesci,	*to eat.*

§ 172. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1.	Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	*to agree to.*
2.	Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri,	*to flatter.*
3.	Expĕrior,	expertus sum,	expĕrīri,	*to try.*
4.	Oppĕrior,	oppertus sum, oppĕrītus,	oppĕrīri,	*to wait for.*
5.	Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	*to give bountifully.*
6.	Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	*to lie.*
7.	Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	*to measure.*
8.	Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	*to labour.*
9.	Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	*to begin.*
10.	Orior,	ortus sum,	ŏrīri,	*to rise.*
11.	Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	*to divide.*
12.	Pŏtior,	pŏtītus sum,	pŏtīri,	*to obtain posses-sion of.*
13.	Pūnior,	pūnītus sum,	pūnīri,	*to punish.*
14.	Sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	*to take by lot.*

In *Orior* the *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation : ŏrĕris, ŏrĭtur, ŏrĭmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ŏrērer and ŏrīrer are found. The compounds coörior and exŏrior, *to arise*, are conjugated like *ŏrior* but ădŏrior, *to attack*, has ădŏrīris, ădŏrītur.

Compound Verbs.

1. The vowel of the simple verb is frequently changed in composition. The rules for these changes are given in § 206.

2. In compound verbs the Reduplication of the Perfect is usually omitted. See § 107, 4, *Obs.*

FORMATION OF WORDS.

CHAPTER XXVIII.—FORMATION OF WORDS.
DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. *A Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) A Pure Root, without any addition whatever: as, ăd, ăb, sŭb; nē or nōn; with other indeclinable words.

> *Obs.* Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a Suffix properly belonging to them: as, fĕr, *bear thou;* dīc, *say thou;* fūr, *a thief;* and the like.

Or (2.) A word derived from a Single Root by the addition of a *Suffix:* as, dīc-o, dic-tio, dīc-ax, from dic.

§ 175. *A Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, hŏmĭcīda, *a manslayer*, from hŏm-o, *a man*, and caed-o, *to kill*.

§ 176. *A Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. *A Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the *s* of the Nominative Case Singular in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations -ōsus, -īnus, -īlis, etc.

> *Obs.* For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the *derivation* of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. *A Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, amb-io, *to go around*. In inflexion a prefix is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, te-tĭg-i (Root, -tag), mo-mŏrd-i (Root, mord), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, ăgĭlis (Stem, ăgĭli) *active;* vŏlens (Stem, vŏlent), *willing;* from the Roots ag (*act*), vol (*will*).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words;* and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

ăg-o,	Stem and Root	AG,	*set in motion, act.*
dūc-o, dux (duc-s),	,,	,, DUC,	*lead.*
rĕg-o, rex (reg-s),	,,	,, REG,	*rule.*
lĕg-o, lex (leg-s),	,,	,, LEG,	*read.*
pēs, pĕd-is,	,	,, PED,	*the foot.*
sōl, sōlis,	,	,, SOL,	*the sun.*
săl, sălis,	,,	,, SAL,	*salt.*

§ 181. I. Substantives derived from Verbs.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. or (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

ăm-or,	*love,*	from	ămo
clām-or,	*a shout,*	,,	clāmo
căl-or,	*warmth,*	,,	căleo
tĭm-or,	*fear,*	,,	tĭmeo
făv-or,	*favour,*	,,	făveo
fŭr-or,	*madness,*	,,	fŭro.

Obs. When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or.*

2. tor (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

ămā-tor,	*a lover,*	from	ămo
audī-tor,	*a hearer,*	,,	audio
mŏnĭ-tor,	*an adviser,*	,,	mŏneo
vic-tor,	*a conqueror,*	,,	vinco (root vɪc)
vēnā-tor,	*a hunter,*	,,	vēnor
lec-tor,	*a reader,*	,,	lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

victor,	victrix,	*conqueress.*
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	*huntress.*

Obs. The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, cursor, *a runner,* from curro (cursum).

3. io and tio (*Gen.* ōnis, *f.*) denote the action : as,

obsĭd-io,	*a siege,*	from	obsĭdeo
oblīv-io,	*forgetfulness,*	,,	oblīviscor
contāg-io,	*a touching, contagion,*	,,	contingo, root (con)TAG
ac-tio,	*doing,*	,,	ăgo
lec-tio,	*reading,*	,,	lĕgo
scrip-tio,	*writing,*	,,	scrībo.

4. tus (*Gen.* tūs, *m.*) also denotes the action : as,

ac-tus,	*doing,*	from	ăgo
audī-tus,	*hearing,*	,,	audio
auc-tus,	*an increase,*	,,	augeo
can-tus,	*singing,*	,,	căno.

Obs. The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, versio and versus from verto ; vīsio and vīsus from vĭdeo.

5. tūra also usually denotes the action : as,

mercā-tūra,	*trading,*	from	mercor
ăper-tūra,	*an opening,*	,,	ăpĕrio
cinc-tūra,	*a girding,*	,,	cingo
junc-tūra,	*a joining,*	,,	jungo.

RBS.

addition of

verb as an

6. ium (*n.*) denotes an act or state : **as,**

gaud-ium,	*joy,*	from gaudeo
ŏd-ium,	*hatred,*	„ ŏdi
incend-ium,	*a conflagration,*	„ incendo
aedĭfĭc-ium,	*a building,*	„ aedĭfĭco.

el is dropped

7. mĕn (*Gen.* mĭnis, *n.*) usually denotes an instrument : **as,**

flŭ-men,	*a river,*	from fluo
lū-men,	*a light,*	„ lūceo
sōlā-men,	*a consolation,*	„ sōlor
teg-men,	*a covering,*	„ tĕgo.

Obs. The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force : as, agmen, *that which is led, an army marching ;* gestämen, *that which is carried,* etc.

(VIC)

8. mentum (*n.*) denotes an instrument : **as,**

dŏcŭ-mentum,	*a proof,*	from dŏceo
impĕdĭ-mentum,	*a hindrance,*	„ impĕdio
mō-mentum,	*a moving force,*	„ mŏveo
ornā-mentum,	*an ornament,*	„ orno.

Feminine

9. bŭlum, cŭlum, and **trum** (*n.*) (**brum** and **crum** after *l*) also denote an instrument : **as,**

vēnā-bŭlum,	*a hunting-spear,*	from vēnor
pā-bŭlum,	*fodder,*	„ pascor
gŭbernā-cŭlum,	*a rudder,*	„ gŭberno
fer-cŭlum,	*a tray,*	„ fĕro
lăvācrum,	*a bath,*	„ lăvo
fulcrum,	*a prop,*	„ fulcio
ventĭlābrum,	*a winnowing-fork,*	„ ventĭlo.
ărātrum,	*a plough,*	„ ăro.

the Supine :

Obs. 1. **If the verb ends in** *c* or *g* the termination is **ŭlum** only : **as,**

jăc-ŭlum,	*a dart,*	from jăcio
cing-ŭlum,	*a girdle,*	„ cingo.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Suffix **bŭlum** signifies a place : as, stă-bŭlum, *a standing-place* or *stall,* from sto (sta-re).

(con)TAG

10. ies (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action : **as,**

făcies,	*figure,*	from făcio
effĭgies,	*image,*	„ effingo (root ex-FIG)
congĕries,	*a heap,*	„ congĕro.

as occur in
from vĭdeo.

§ 182. II. Substantives derived from Substantives.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. ārius (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation : **as,**

argent-ārius,	*a silversmith,*	from argentum
stătŭ-ārius,	*a statuary,*	„ stătua
aer-ārius,	*a coppersmith,*	„ aes
sīc-ārius	*an assassin,*	„ sīca.

2. **ărium** (*n.*) denotes the place where anything is kept : as,

arm-ārium	*a cupboard,*	from arma, orum
ăvi-ārium,	*an aviary,*	„ ăvis
cŏlumb-ārium,	*a dove-cote,*	„ cŏlumba
aer-ārium,	*a treasury,*	„ aes.

Obs. ărius and *ărium* are properly the Suffixes of Adjectives. See § 187, 5.

3. **Ina** (*f.*) denotes an employment, and also the place where the employment is carried on : as,

mĕdĭc-īna,	*the healing art,*	from mĕdĭcus
offĭc-īna,	*a workshop,*	„ offĭcium
sutr-īna,	*a shoemaker's shop,*	„ sūtor.

Obs. Officina is a contraction for ŏpĭfĭcĭna (ŏpus, făcio).

Sometimes *ina* denotes simply the female : as,

rēg-īna,	*a queen,*	from rex
gall-īna,	*a hen,*	„ gallus.

Obs. ina is properly a feminine Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 7.

4. **ātus** (*Gen.* ūs, *m.*) and **ūra** (*f.*), added to Substantives designating public officers, denote the office : as,

consŭl-ātus,	*consulship,*	from consul
trĭbūn-ātus,	*tribuneship,*	„ trĭbūnus
cens-ūra,	*censorship,*	„ censor
praet-ūra,	*praetorship,*	„ praetor.

5. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an employment, condition, &c. : as,

săcerdōt-ium,	*priesthood,*	from săcerdōs (-dōtis)
mĭnistĕr-ium,	*service,*	„ mĭnister
exsĭl-ium,	*exile,*	„ exsul
hospĭt-ium,	*hospitality,*	„ hospes (-pĭtis).

6. **ăl** (*n.*) and **ăr** (*n.*) denote a material object : as,

ănĭm-al,	*an animal,*	from ănĭma,	*life.*
calcăr,	*a spur,*	„ calx (calc-s),	*the heel.*

7. **ētum** (*n.*) affixed to names of trees or plants denotes the place where they grow in a quantity, and also the trees themselves collectively : as,

myrt-ētum,	*a myrtle-grove,*	from myrtus
querc-ētum,	*an oak-plantation,*	„ quercus
ŏlīv-ētum,	*an olive-yard,*	„ ŏlīva
vīn-ētum,	*a vineyard,*	„ vīnea.

8. **īle** (*Gen.* ĭs, *n.*) affixed to the names of animals denotes a place for them : as,

bŏv-īle,	*an ox-stall,*	from bos, bŏvis
ĕqu-īle,	*a stable for horses,*	„ ĕquus
ŏv-īle,	*a sheep-fold,*	„ ŏvis.

Obs. īle is properly a neuter Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 4.

§ 183. DIMINUTIVES.

Diminutives denote not only *smallness*, but also *endear-ment*, *commiseration*, or *contempt*. They follow the gender of the substantives from which they are derived, and are formed by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. **ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum**, added to substantives of the First and Second Declensions : as,

nīd-ŭlus,	*a little nest,*	from nīdus
hort-ŭlus,	*a little garden,*	,, hortus
rīv-ŭlus,	*a little river,*	,, rīvus
mens-ŭla,	*a little table,*	,, mensa
silv-ŭla,	*a little wood,*	,, silva
virg-ŭla,	*a little twig,*	,, virga
căpĭt-ŭlum,	*a small head,*	,, căpŭt
sax-ŭlum,	*a small rock,*	,, saxum
scūt-ŭlum,	*a small shield,*	,, scūtum.

2. **cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum**, added to substantives of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions : as,

frāter-cŭlus,	*a little brother,*	from frāter
flos-cŭlus,	*a little flower,*	,, flos
versĭ-cŭlus,	*a little verse,*	,, versus
māter-cŭla,	*a poor mother,*	,, māter
nāvĭ-cŭla,	*a small ship,*	,, nāvis
ăvĭ-cŭla,	*a small bird,*	,, ăvis
rē-cŭla,	*a small matter,*	,, rēs
corpus-cŭlum,	*a small body,*	,, corpus
mūnus-cŭlum,	*a small present,*	,, mūnus
rētĭ-cŭlum,	*a little net,*	,, rēte.

Obs. 1. If a vowel precede the Suffixes *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, they become *ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum :* as,

fīli-ŏlus,	*a little son,*	from fīlius
malle-ŏlus,	*a small hammer,*	,, malleus
fīli-ŏla,	*a little daughter,*	,, fīlia
līne-ŏla,	*a little line,*	,, līnea
nĕgōti-ŏlum,	*a little business,*	,, nĕgōtium
ingĕni-ŏlum,	*a little talent,*	,, ingĕnium.

Obs. 2. If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *l*, *n*, or *r*, and in a few other cases, a contraction takes place, and the termination of the diminutive becomes *ellus, ella, ellum*, and sometimes, but rarely, *illus, illa, illum :* as,

ŏcellus,	*a little eye,*	from ŏcŭlus	(Stem, ŏcŭlo)	
lĭbellus,	*a little book,*	,, lĭber	(,,	libro)
lăpillus,	*a little stone,*	,, lăpis	(,,	lăpid)
cătella,	*a little chain,*	,, cătēna	(,,	cătēna)
anguilla,	*a little snake,*	,, anguis	(,,	angui)
sĭgillum,	*a little figure,*	,, signum	(,,	signo).

Obs. 3. If the Stem of the primitive ends in *c* or *g*, *t* or *d*, the diminutives are generally formed by adding *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum :* as,

rēg-ŭlus,	*a petty king,*	from rex (reg-s)
rādīc-ŭla,	*a little root,*	,, rādix (rādic-s).

F 3

§ 184. Patronymics.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in:

1. **ĭdes**: as, Priăm-ĭdes, *a son of Priamus.*
2. **īdes**: as, Atr-īdes, *a son of Atreus.*
3. **ădes** and **ĭădes**: as, Aene-ădes, *a son of Aeneas;* Atlant-iădes, *a son of Atlas.*

> *Obs.* Patronymics in īdes (εἴδης) are only formed from Proper Names in eus (εύς)

Feminine Patronymics end in:

1. **is**, *Gen.* **ĭdis**: as, Tantal-is, *a daughter of Tantalus.*
2. **ēis**, *Gen.* **ēĭdis**: as, Nel-ēis, *a daughter of Neleus.*
3. **ias**, *Gen.* **iădis**: as, Laert-ias, *a daughter of Laertes.*
4. **īne**: as, Neptūn-īne, *a daughter of Neptunus.*
5. **ōne**: as, Acrĭsi-ōne, *a daughter of Acrisius.*

§ 185. III. Substantives derived from Adjectives.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes:—

1. **ia** (*f.*): as,

grăt-ia,	*favour,*	from grātus
insān-ia,	*madness,*	„ insānus
mĭsĕr-ia,	*wretchedness,*	„ mĭser
prūdent-ia,	*prudence,*	„ prūdens.

2. **tia** (*f.*): as,

laetĭ-tia,	*joy,*	from laetus
justĭ-tia,	*justice,*	„ justus
mollĭ-tia,	*softness,*	„ mollis
pigrĭ-tia,	*sloth,*	„ pĭger.

3. **tās** (*Gen.* tātis, *f.*): as,

bŏnĭ-tas,	*goodness,*	from bŏnus
vērĭ-tas,	*truth,*	„ vĕrus
crūdēlĭ-tas,	*cruelty,*	„ crūdēlis
atrōcĭ-tas,	*fierceness,*	„ atrox.

4. **tūdo** (*Gen.* tūdĭnis, *f.*): as,

altĭ-tūdo,	*height,*	from altus
aegrĭ-tūdo,	*sickness,*	„ aeger
fortĭ-tūdo,	*bravery,*	„ fortis
sĭmĭlĭ-tūdo,	*likeness,*	„ sĭmĭlis.

5. **mōnia** (*f.*): as,

sanctĭ-mōnia,	*sanctity,*	from sanctus
castĭ-mōnia,	*purity,*	„ castus
ācrĭ-mōnia	*sharpness,*	„ ācer.

CHAPTER XXIX.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 186. I. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **bundus**, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle. See § 110, 3.

2. **ĭdus** denotes the quality expressed by a verb : as,

frīg-ĭdus,	cold,	from frīgeo
măd-ĭdus,	wet,	„ mădeo
tĭm-ĭdus,	fearful,	„ tĭmeo
văl-ĭdus,	strong,	„ văleo.

3. **ĭlis** and **bĭlis** denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense : as,

dŏc-ĭlis,	teachable,	from dŏceo
făc-ĭlis,	doable (easy),	„ făcio
ămā-bĭlis,	loveable,	„ ămo
mō-bĭlis,	moveable,	„ mŏveo.
(=mŏvĭ-bĭlis)		

4. **ax** denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one : as,

aud-ax,	daring,	from audeo
ĕd-ax,	gluttonous,	„ ĕdo
lŏqu-ax,	talkative,	„ lŏquor
vŏr-ax,	voracious,	„ vŏro.

Obs. The following Suffixes are less common :

1. **cundus**: as, Irā-cundus, *angry,* from Ira-scor
   fā-cundus, *eloquent* „ fāri
2. **ŭlus**: as, quĕr-ŭlus, *querulous,* „ quĕror.

§ 187. II. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. **ĕus** denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance : as,

aur-eus,	golden,	from aurum
lign-eus,	wooden,	„ lignum
pĭc-eus	pitchy,	„ pix, pĭcis
virgĭn-eus,	maidenlike,	„ virgo, -ĭnis.

2. **ĭcius** or **ĭtius** denotes the material, or relation to something : as,

lătĕr-ĭcĭus,	made of bricks,	from lăter
trĭbūn-ĭcĭus,	relating to a tribune,	„ trĭbūnus
aedĭl-ĭcĭus,	relating to an aedile,	„ aedĭlis.

Obs. 1. **āceus** has the same meaning, but is rare : as, argill-āceus, *made of clay,* from argilla.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in **ĭcius** derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind : as, commentĭcius, *feigned.*

3. **Icus** denotes belonging or relating to a thing : as,

bell-Icus,	*relating to war,*	from bellum
cîv-Icus,	*relating to a citizen,*	„ civis
class-Icus,	*relating to a fleet,*	„ classis.

Obs. The following Adjectives in **icus** have **I**:

ămīcus,	*friendly,*	from	ămo, ămor
antīcus,	*front,*	„	antĕ
postīcus,	*hinder,*	„	post.
aprīcus,	*sunny,*	„	ăpĕrio (?)

4. **īlis** has the same meaning : as,

host-īlis,	*hostile,*	from hostis
serv-īlis,	*slavish,*	„ servus
puĕr-īlis,	*childish,*	„ puer.

5. **ālis** has the same meaning : as,

fāt-ālis,	*fatal,*	from fātum
rēg-ālis,	*kingly,*	„ rex
vīt-ālis,	*vital,*	„ vīta.

Obs. If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *l*, the Suffix of the Adjective is **āris** (comp. § 181, 9) : as,

pŏpŭl-āris,	*pertaining to the people,*	from pŏpŭlus
sălūt-āris,	*salutary,*	„ sălūs, sălūtis.

6. **ius** has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names : as,

patr-ius,	*pertaining to a father,*	from păter
sŏrŏr-ius,	*pertaining to a sister,*	„ sŏror
ōrātŏr-ius,	*pertaining to an orator,*	„ ōrātor.

7. **Inus** has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals : as,

căn-īnus,	*pertaining to a dog,*	from cănis
ĕqu·īnus,	*pertaining to a horse,*	„ ĕquus
dīv-īnus,	*pertaining to the gods,*	„ dīvus.

8. **ānus** has the same meaning : as,

urb-ānus,	*pertaining to a city,*	from urbs
font-ānus,	*pertaining to a fountain,*	„ fons, fontis
mont-ānus,	*pertaining to a mountain,*	„ mons, montis.

9. **ārius** has the same meaning : as,

agr·ārius,	*pertaining to land,*	from ăgĕr
grĕg-ārius,	*belonging to a flock,*	„ grex, grĕgis
lĕgiōn-ārius,	*belonging to a legion,*	„ lĕgio.

Obs. ārius and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Substantives. See § 182.

10. **ōsus** denotes fulness : as,

lăpĭd-ōsus,	*full of stones,*	from lăpis
pĕrīcŭl-ōsus,	*full of dangers,*	„ pĕrīcŭlum
ănĭm-ōsus,	*full of courage,*	„ ănĭmus.

11. **lentus,** usually preceded by the vowel ŭ or ŏ, also denotes fulness : as,

fraud-ŭlentus,   *full of deceit,*   from fraus (fraud-s)
vi-ŏlentus,   *full of violence,*   „ vis

12. **ātus,** sometimes **ītus** and **ūtus,** denote having something or provided with something : as,

ālā-tus,   *furnished with wings, winged,*   from āla
tŏg-ātus,   „   *a toga,*   „ tŏga
aur-ītus,   „   *ears,*   „ auris
corn-ūtus,   „   *horns, horned,*   „ cornu.

§ 188. III. Adjectives derived from Proper Names.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix **ānus** or **iānus:** as,

Mări-ānus,   from Mărius
Sull-ānus,   „ Sulla
Gracch-ānus,   „ Gracchus
Cĭcĕrōn-iānus,   „ Cĭcĕro.

The Suffix **īnus** is rare : as,

Verr-īnus (punningly), from Verres (or verres, *a hog*).

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes **ēus** or **īus** and **īcus:** as,

Epĭcūr-ēus,   from Epĭcūrus
Aristŏtĕl-īus   „ Aristŏtĕles
Plătōn-īcus,   „ Plăto.

The poets form Adjectives in **ĕus** from Roman names : as,

Rōmŭl-eus,   from Rōmŭlus.

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **ensis:** as,

Cann-ensis,   from Cannae
Cōm-ensis,   „ Cōmum
Sulmōn-ensis,   „ Sulmo (Sulmōn-is).

2. **īnus,** from names of towns in *ia* and *ium:* as,

Amĕr-īnus,   from Amĕria
Caud-īnus,   „ Caudium.

3. **ānus,** from names of towns in *a* and *ae,* and from some in *um* and *i:* as,

Rōm-ānus,   from Rōma
Thēb-ānus,   „ Thēbae
Tuscŭl-ānus,   „ Tuscŭlum
Fund-ānus,   „ Fundi.

4. **ās**, *Gen.* **ātis**, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *na* and *nae:* as,

Arpīnās,	from Arpīnum
Căpēnās,	„ Căpēna
Fīdēnās,	„ Fīdēnae.

Obs. 1. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

Obs. 2. In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius:* as,

         Cŏrinth-ius,   from Cŏrinthus.

§ 190.

Sometimes Adjectives in **ĭcus** are formed from the names of people, espe ially when the latter are used only as Substantives : as,

Gall-ĭcus, *Gallic*,	from Gallus, *a Gaul.*
Arăb-ĭcus, *Arabic*,	„ Arabs, *an Arab.*

Obs. The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people : as, Hispānia, *Spain*, from Hispānus. Adjectives in **ensis** derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people : as, exercĭtus Hispāniensis, *an army stationed in Spain*, not an army consisting of Spaniards ; but, on the other hand, spartum Hispānĭcum is a plant growing in Spain ; similarly Gallicānus from Gallĭcus.

CHAPTER XXX.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes : as,

mātūro,	*I make ripe,*	from mātūrus
lībĕro,	*I make free,*	„ līber
rōbŏro,	*I make strong, I strengthen,*	„ rōbŭr (rōbŏr-is).

Obs. A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed : as,

fīnio,	*I finish,*	from fīnis
mollio,	*I soften,*	„ mollis.

§ 192.

Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to provide oneself with* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes : as,

ancillor,	*I am a maid-servant,*	from ancilla
ăquor,	*I fetch water,*	„ ăqua
laetor,	*I am joyful,*	„ laetus
phĭlŏsŏphor,	*I am a philosopher,*	„ phĭlŏsŏphus.

§ 193. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

calveo,	*I am bald,*	from calvus
albeo,	*I am white,*	„ albus.

Obs. Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, dūresᴄᴏ (dūreo), *I grow hard,* from dūrus.

§ 194. II. Verbs derived from Verbs.

1. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding ĭto to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

clăm-ĭto,	*I cry out often,*	from clāmo
rŏg-ĭto,	*I ask often,*	„ rŏgo
mĭn-ĭtor,	*I threaten often,*	„ mĭnor
lect-ĭto,	*I read often,*	„ lĕgo, lectum
script-ĭto,	*I write often,*	„ scrībo, scriptum
vent-ĭto,	*I come often,*	„ vĕnio, ventum.

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

curso,	*I run hither and thither,*	from curro, cursum
salto,	*I dance,*	„ sălio, saltum.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding sco (asco, esco, isco), 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

lăb-asco,	*I begin to totter,*	from lăbo
căl-esco,	*I grow warm,*	„ căleo
trĕm-isco,	*I begin to tremble,*	„ trĕmo
obdormi-sco,	*I fall asleep,*	„ dormio
sĕn-esco,	*I grow old,*	„ sĕnex.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding ŭrio, and dropping the um of the termination: as,

ēs-ŭrio,	*I long to eat,*	from ĕdo, ēsum
script-ŭrio,	*I long to write,*	„ scrībo, scriptum.

Obs. By analogy is formed Sullatŭrio, *I long to play the part of Sulla.*

4. *Diminutive Verbs* express a diminution of the action and end in illo (illāre, 1): as,

cant-illo,	*I warble,*	from canto
sorb-illo,	*I sip,*	„ sorbeo
conscrīb-illo,	*I scribble,*	„ conscrībo

§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state : as,

jăcio,	jăcĕre,	*to throw,*	jăceo,	jăcēre,	*to lie.*
pendo,	pendĕre,	*to hang, to weigh,*	pendeo,	pendēre,	*to be hanging.*
părio,	părĕre,	*to bring forth,*	păreo,	părēre,	*to be visible.*
(cando, candĕre), incendo, incendĕre,	} *to set on fire,*		candeo,	candēre,	*to be burning.*

CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 196. Adverbs in ē are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive : as,

mŏdestē,	*modestly,*	from mŏdestus
pulchrē,	*beautifully,*	„ pulcher
doctē,	*learnedly,*	„ doctus.

Obs. 1. From bŏnus comes bĕnĕ, from mălus comes mălĕ, both with the final *e* short. From vălĭdus, *strong,* comes valdē.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tĕr as well as in ē : as,

dūrē,	dūrĭtĕr,	*severely,*	from dūrus
firmē,	firmĭtĕr,	*firmly,*	„ firmus
gnāvē,	gnāvĭtĕr,	*actively,*	„ gnāvus
hūmānē,	hūmānĭtĕr,	*courteously,*	„ hūmānus
largē,	largĭtĕr,	*bounteously,*	„ largus
lūcŭlentē,	lūcŭlentĕr,	*splendidly,*	„ lūcŭlentus.

From viŏlentus, *vehement,* there is only viŏlentĕr ; the form viŏlens is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in ō are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular : as,

falsō,	*falsely,*	from falsus
tutō,	*safely,*	„ tutus
crēbrō,	*frequently,*	„ crēber.

Obs. The form in o is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in ē and ō, but with a difference of meaning : as, certō, *certainly,* and certē, *at any rate ;* vērō. *in truth, indeed,* and vērē, *truly.*

§ 198. Adverbs in tĕr are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension : as,

| grăvĭ-tĕr, | *heavily,* | from grăvis |
| fēlīcĭ-tĕr, | *fortunately,* | „ fēlix. |

Obs. If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: as,

<div align="center">

săpienter,　　*wisely*,　　from săpiens (săpient-s).

</div>

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs: as,

<div align="center">

făcĭlĕ, *easily*; rĕcens, *lately*; multum, *much*.

</div>

§ 200. Adverbs in **ĭtŭs** are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from* something: as,

<div align="center">

coel-ĭtŭs,　　*from heaven*,　　from coelum
rādīc-ĭtŭs,　　*from the roots*,　　„　rādix (rādic-s).

</div>

§ 201. Adverbs in **tim** are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner: as,

<div align="center">

cătervā-tim,　　*in troops*,　　from căterva
prīvā-tim,　　*as a private person*,　　„　prīvātus
stă-tim,　　*immediately*,　　„　sto (stare)
punc-tim,　　*with the point*,　　„　pungo.

</div>

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73.

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

CHAPTER XXXII.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

Obs. Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are written together, but these are not genuine compounds: as,

<div align="center">

respublĭca,　　*Gen.* rĕïpublĭcae,　　*the commonwealth.*
jusjūrandum,　　*Gen.* jūrisjūrandi,　　*an oath.*
sĕnātus-consultum,　　　*a resolution of the senate.*
ăquae-ductus,　　　*a water-channel.*

</div>

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when făcio is in the second: as,

<div align="center">

ārĕfăcio,　　*to make dry.*
călĕfăcio,　　*to make warm.*
lĭquĕfăcio,　　*to cause to melt.*
mădĕfăcio,　　*to make wet.*
pătĕfăcio,　　*to throw open.*

</div>

Obs. Such apparent compounds as nĭdĭfĭco, *I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective: as, nĭdĭfĭcus, *nest-building*.

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes:—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

căpio,	*to take,*	accĭpio
răpio,	*to seize,*	arrĭpio
pătior,	*to suffer,*	perpĕtior
grădior,	*to walk,*	congrĕdior.

Obs. Pĕrăgo, *to complete,* perplăceo, *to please greatly,* and făcio compounded with adverbs, as sătisfăcio, *to satisfy,* are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

carpo,	*to pluck,*	concerpo
damno,	*to condemn,*	condemno
scando.	*to climb,*	conscendo
spargo,	*to scatter*	conspergo.

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

salto,	*to dance,*	insulto
calco,	*to tread,*	conculco
quătio,	*to shake,*	concŭtio.

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ĕgĕo,	*to want,*	indĭgeo
sĕdeo,	*to sit,*	insĭdeo
tĕneo,	*to hold,*	abstĭneo.

Obs. Perlĕgo, *to read through,* praelĕgo, *to read to others,* rĕlego, *to read again,* are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo,	*to cut,*	occīdo
quaero,	*to seek,*	inquīro
laedo,	*to strike,*	collīdo.

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *ē*: as,

plaudo,	*to clap the hands,*	explōdo
claudo,	*to shut,*	conclūdo
audio,	*to hear,*	ŏbēdio.

Obs. The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 138.

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel ĭ; or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pĕdĭsĕquus,	*a follower on foot,*	from peĭ (pĕd) and sĕquor
mūnĭfĭcus,	*bountiful,*	„ mūnus and făcio
causĭdĭcus,	*an advocate,*	„ causa and dīco
agrĭcŏla,	*a husbandman,*	„ ăgĕr and cŏlo
ăquĭlĭfĕr,	*a standard-bearer,*	„ ăquĭla and fĕro.

§ 208. The *quantity* of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fĕro, affĕro; hăbeo, prŏhĭbeo, etc. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the Prosody.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

Chapter XXXIII.—Of Sentences.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: Subject and Predicate.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (praedĭcāre, *to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

> *Obs.* In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as *enlargements* of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, Alexander Magnus rex Măcĕdŏnum ĕrat, *Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians, Alexander* is the Subject, and *rex* the Predicate; *Magnus* being an enlargement of the Subject (*Alexander*), and *Macedonum* an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the complement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, Caesar vīcit Gallos, *Caesar conquered the Gauls*, the object *Gallos* is a complement of the predicate *vicit*.

§ 211. The Subject.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

India mittit ĕbur, *India sends ivory.*—Virg.
Hos ĕgo versĭcŭlos fēci, *I made these little verses.*—Virg.

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

Pulchrum est dĭgĭto monstrāri, *It is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.*—Pers. (Subject, monstrari.)

§ 213. The Predicate.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

Omnia jam *fient, All the things will now come to pass.*—Ov.
Sōcrătes Graecōrum *sapientissĭmus* (ĕrat), *Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.*—Cic.

Hannĭbal Hămilcăris *filius* (fuit), *Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* When the Verb "to be" is employed to connect Subject and Predicate (as in two of the above examples), it is called the Copula (cōpŭla, *tie or band*).

§ 214. APPOSITION.—Sometimes a Substantive is enlarged by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

Thĕmistocles, *impĕrātor* Persĭco bello, Graeciam servĭtute lībĕrāvit, *Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.*—Cic.

Scĕlĕrum *inventor* Ŭlysses, *Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.*—Virg.

Ŏleae Mĭnerva *inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive.*—Virg.

Ut ŏmittam illas omnium doctrīnarum *inventrīces* Athēnas, *To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventress of every branch of learning.*—Cic.

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

Tulliŏla, *dēlĭcĭŏlae nostrae*, mūnuscŭlum tuum flāgĭtat, *Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.*—Cic.

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs, oppĭdum, cīvĭtas* or a similar word, the Predicate is made to agree therewith: as,

Cŏriŏli *oppĭdum captum est, The town of Corioli was taken.*—Liv.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words "as" or "when:" as,

Dēfendi rempublĭcam *jŭvĕnis, I defended the commonwealth as* (or *when*) *a young man.*—Cic.

Nēmo fĕre saltat *sōbrius*, nĭsi forte insānit, *Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

═══════════

CHAPTER XXXIV.—CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

§ 218. Syntax is sometimes divided into two parts: SYNTAX OF CONCORD and SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

Alexander vīcit Darīum, *Alexander conquered Darius*

enlarged
ve of it.
with the
the same

e lĭbĕrāvit,
reece from

ls.—Virg.
Virg.
as, *To say
earning.*—

ot of the
fers, the
r of the

Tullia, my

oppĭdum,
to agree

—Liv.

where in
:" as,

lth as (or

me dances

IENT.

o parts:

t or cor-
h other;
exerted
Thus in

the Verb *vicit* corresponds ("agrees") with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Darium* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be "governed." [Syntax of Government.]

First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

Cŏnon magnas res *gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.

Athēnienses omnium cīvium suōrum pŏtentiam *extĭmescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

Castor et Pollux ex ĕquis pugnāre *vīsi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic.

Vīta, mors, dīvĭtiae, paupertas, omnes hŏmĭnes vĕhĕmentissĭme *per-mŏvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

> Obs. 1. When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,
> Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus *intellĭgit, The senate and people of Rome are* (lit. *is*) *aware.*—Cic.
>
> Tempus nĕcessĭtasque *postŭlat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

> Obs. 2. Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,
> Orgĕtŏrĭgis fīlia et ūnus e filiis *captus est, The daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons* was *taken prisoner.*—Caes.

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= nos); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural (= vos): thus ĕgo et tu, or ĕgo et frāter meus, both = nos; while tu et ille, tu et frāter, = vos: as,

Si tu et Tullia lux nostra *vălētis*, ego et suāvissĭmus Cĭcĕro *vălēmus, If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cĭcero (= so are we).*—Cic.

> Obs. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as, ĕgo et rex, *the king and I*, literally, *I and the king.*

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive
("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the
Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the
poets: as,

Tūra fĕrant plācĕn.'que nŏvum pia *turba* Quĭrīnum, *Let the pious
people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.*—Ov.

Dēsectam sĕgĕtem magna *vis hŏmĭnum* sĭmul immissa corbĭbus
fūdēre in Tĭbĕrim, *A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the
corn and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.*—Liv.

Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees
with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Jam *pauca* ărātro *jūgĕra rēgiae*
Mōles rĕlinquent,
Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.—Hor.

—— Nec te [sĭlēbo] *mĕtuende certâ*
Phoebe săgittâ,
*Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine
unerring shaft.*—Hor.

Obs. The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a
Predicate: as, vĭr bŏnus, *a good man;* or vĭr est bŏnus, *the man is good.*

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in
forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice agrees in
Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

Omnium assensu *comprŏbāta ōrātio* est, *The speech was approved by
the assent of all.*—Liv.

Neglectum Anxŭri *praesĭdium* (est), *The garrison at Anxur was not
looked after.*—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of
two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural
Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different
genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

Păter mĭhi et māter *mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead.*
—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different
genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

Sĕcundae rēs, hŏnōres, impĕria, victōriae *fortuĭta* sunt, *Prosperit',
honours, places of command, victories are accidental.*—Cic.

Lăbor vŏluptasque sŏciĕtāte quādam inter sē conjuncta sunt, Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.—Liv.

Obs. 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

Ira et ăvărĭtia impĕrio pŏtentiŏra ĕrant, Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.—Liv.

Obs. 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest : as, omnes agri et măria, *all seas and lands ;* or the Adjective is repeated, as, agri omnes omniaque măria.

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject : as,

Duo *millia* Tўriōrum crŭcĭbus *affixi* sunt, *Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.*—Curt.

Căpĭta conjūrātiōnis virgis *caesi* ac sĕcŭri *percussi* sunt, *The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.*—Liv.

Obs. In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *căpĭta* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word *"thing :"* as,

Triste lŭpus stăbŭlis, *The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.*—Virg.
Turpĭtūdo pējus est quam dŏlor, Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.—Cic.

Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person : as,

Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, *I who am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.*—Cic.

Nullum *ănĭmal, quod* sanguĭnem hăbet, sĭne corde esse pŏtest, *No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

Obs. The *Case* of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence : as,

Arbŏres sĕret dĭlĭgens agrĭcŏla, quărum adspĭciet baccam ipse nunquam, *The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

NOTE.—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Substantive baccam in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 265.]

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate : as,

Caesar Gomphos pervēnit, *quod* (not *qui*) est *oppĭdum* Boeōtiae, *Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.

Lĕvis est ănĭmi, justam glōriam, *qui* (not *quae*) est *fructus* vērae virtūtis hŏnestissĭmus, rĕpŭdiāre, *It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.*—Cic.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive, and **id quod** is generally used instead of quod : as,

Tīmŏleon, id quod diffĭcĭlius pŭtātur, multo săpientius tūlit sĕcundam, quam adversam fortūnam, *Timoleon, a thing which is thought the more difficult, bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.*—Nep.

Chapter XXXV.—The Nominative Case.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence : as,

Ego rēges ējēci, *vos* tўrannos intrōdūcĭtis, *I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.*—Auct. ad Hcr.   See also § 219.

> *Obs.* Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, in the *Oblīqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used to denote the Predicate after the following Verbs :—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become* : as, sum, existo, fīo, ēvādo (*to issue, turn out*) nascor (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence* : as, măneo (*to remain*), dūro (*to endure*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing* : as, nōmĭnor, dīcor, appellor [also audio, in sense of *to be called*]; creor, fīo, dēsignor, instĭtuor, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *be thought* : as vĭdeor, hăbeor, existĭmor, dūcor, etc. : as,

(1.) Nēmo rĕpente fit *turpissĭmus*, *No one becomes utterly base all at once.*—Juv.

Nēmo nascĭtur *dives*, *No one is born rich.*—Scn.

(2.) Mūnītiōnes integrae mănēbant, *The fortifications remained entire.*—Caes.

(3.) Nŭma Pompĭlius *rex* crĕātus est, *Numa Pompilius was made king.*—Eutr.

Justĭtia erga deos *relĭgio* dīcĭtur, *Justice towards the gods is called religion.*—Cic.

(4.) Sătis altĭtūdo mūri *exstructa* vĭdēbātur, *The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep.

In rēbus angustis *ănĭmōsus* et *fortis* appāre, *In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.*—Hor.

Chapter XXXVI.—The Accusative Case.

1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent. govern the Accusative : as,

Deus *mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, God built the world.*—Cic.

Glŏria *virtūtem* tanquam umbra *sĕquĭtur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.*—Cic.

Nulla ars *ĭmĭtāri sollertiam* nātūrae pŏtest, *No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passives, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent : if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed : as, mǎgister puerum laudat, *The master praises the boy,* becomes in the Passive, puer a mǎgistro laudātur, *The boy is praised by the master.*
>
> *Obs.* 2. But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only *impersonally :* as,
>
> *Invĭdētur* praestanti flōrentique fortūnae, *Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.*—Cic.　(Lit., *Envy is felt* by men *for eminent fortune.*)
>
> Non *parcētur* lăbōri, *Labour shall not be spared.*—Cic.　(Lit., *There shall be no sparing for labour.*)
>
> *Obs.* 3. The principal *apparent* exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves : as,

Hac n. ..... rum *somniāvi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.*—Pl.

Vērissimum ..... *ĭum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* This co..... ..u is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed.

§ 236. Other intransitive Verbs often govern an Accusative by virtue of some transitive meaning implied in them. This is often the case with those verbs which denote a state of mind, like **lūgeo,** *I mourn,* lūgeo ălĭquid, *I mourn on account of something ;* **horreo,** *I shudder,* horreo ălĭquid, *I shudder at something,* &c. : as,

Sĕquăni Arĭŏvisti *crūdēlĭtātem horrēbant, The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus.*—Caes.

Amōre *ălĭquam dēpĕrire, To be dying of love for some one.*—Plaut.

Contrĕmĕre *hastam, To tremble at the lance.*—Virg.

　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　G

§ 238. *All* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions **circum, per, praeter, trans, super,** and **subter,** become Transitives, and govern an Accusative : as,

Tīmŏtheus *Pĕlŏponnēsum circumvĕhens* Lăcŏnĭam pŏpŭlātus est, *Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.*—Nep.

Hannĭbal *Alpes* cum exercĭtu *transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.*—Nep.

§ 239. *Many* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions **ad** and **in,** and *some* verbs compounded with **ante, con, ex,** and **prae,** become Transitives, and govern an Accusative : as,

Nāves *Genuam accessērunt, The ships reached Genoa.*—Liv.

Urbem invādunt, *They fall upon the city.*—Virg.

Nēmĭnem convēni, *I have met no one.*—Cic.

Sociĕtātem coīre, *To form a partnership.*—Cic.

Mŏdum excēdĕre, *To exceed the limit.*—Cic.

Quantum Galli virtūte *cētĕros mortāles praestārent, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.*—Liv.

Nēmo eum in ămīcĭtiā antecessit, *no one excelled him in friendship.*—Nep.

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, **pŭdet,** *it shameth ;* **taedet,** *it wearieth ;* **poenĭtet,** *it repenteth ;* **pĭget,** *it grieveth ;* and **mĭsĕret,** *it pitieth (affects with pity)* ; take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects.* The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282) : as,

Mē pĭget stultĭtiae meae, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

Tīmŏthei post mortem *pŏpŭlum* jūdĭcii sŭi *poenĭtuit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

§ 242. In like manner **dĕcet,** *it is becoming,* and **dēdĕcet,** *it is unbecoming,* take an Accusative of the Person : as,

Orātōrem mĭnĭme dĕcet īrasci, *It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* In like manner the Impersonals **jŭvat,** *it delights;* **lătet, fallit, fŭgit, praetĕrit,** *it escapes (notice) ;* **ŏportet,** *it behoves,* take an Accusative of the Person.

2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person : as, **dŏceo,** *I teach* (with its compounds) ; **cēlo,** *I conceal, hide from :* as,

Quis *mŭsĭcam* dŏcuit *Epămĭnondam, Who taught Epaminondas music ?*—Nep.

ded with
nd subter,
s,

ilātus est,
Nep.

d the Alps

pounded
pounded
d govern

y.

much the

iendship.—

shameth ;
eth ; and
ve of the
eeling is

r the death

lēcet, it is

to lose his

tet, fallit,
e an Accu-

double
other of
); cēlo,

minondas

Non cēlāvi *te sermōnem* hŏmĭnum, *I have not kept from you the men's discourse.*—Cic.

> *Obs. Accusative after a Passive Verb.* When a Verb of *teaching,* &c. is turned into the Passive (see § 234, *Obs.* 1), the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative : as,
>
> L. Marcius *omnes* mīlĭtiae *artes* ēdoctus fuĕrat, *Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.*—Liv.

§ 244. Some verbs of *asking, entreating,* and *demanding* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person : as, ōro, *I entreat,* rŏgo, *I ask* or *entreat ;* and posco, rĕposco, flāgĭto, *I demand :* as,

Lēgāti *Verrem* sĭmŭlācrum Cĕrĕris rĕposcunt, *The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.*—Cic.

Caesar *frūmentum Aeduos* flāgĭtābat, *Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.*—Caes.

> *Obs.* When a verb of *asking,* &c. is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative : as,
>
> Prīmus rŏgātus est *sententiam, He was first asked for his opinion.*—Sall.

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative.*—Verbs signifying *to name, to make* or *appoint, to reckon* or *esteem,* and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object : as,

Rōmŭlus urbem ex nōmĭne suo *Rōmam* (*Fact. Acc.*) vŏcāvit, *Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.*—Eutr.

Contempsit Sĭcŭlos, non duxit (eos) *homines* (*Fact. Acc.*), *He despised the Sicilians ; he did not take them for human beings.*—Cic.

Ancum Martium *rēgem* (*Fact. Acc.*) pŏpŭlus creāvit, *The people made Ancus Martius king.*—Liv.

> *Obs.* The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs : see § 232.

§ 246. Transitive Verbs compounded with trans and circum, as transjĭcio, transdūco, transporto, *to carry across,* and circumdūco, *to lead around,* take after them a double Accusative, one of the person, and the other of the thing crossed : as,

Agēsĭlāus *Hellespontum* cōpias trājēcit, *Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Pompēius *Roscillum* omnia sua *praesĭdia* circumduxit, *Pompeius led Roscillus round all his entrenchments.*—Caes.

> *Obs.* In the Passive one of the two Accusatives remains : as,
>
> Mājor multĭtūdo Germānōrum *Rhēnum* transdūcĭtur, *A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.*—Caes.

3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards.* For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards, proximity,* or *relation to :* as, **ad,** in for *into,* **inter, prŏpĕ,** &c. See §§ 135, 137.

4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long ? How far ? How high ? How deep ? How broad ? How thick ?* as,

Quaedam bestiŏlae *unum diem* vīvunt, *Some insects live but one day.* —Cic.

Pĕricles *quadrāginta annos* praefuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

Pĕdem e villā adhuc ĕgressi non sŭmus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic.

Campus Mărăthon ab Athēnis circĭter *millia* passuum dĕcem ăbest, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*— Nep.

Mīlĭtes aggĕrem lātum *pĕdes trĕcentos trĭginta,* altum *pĕdes octōginta* exstruxĕrunt, *The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet broad and 80 feet high.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus, altus,* the Genitive would have been used : see § 274.)

5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection : as,

Me caecum, qui haec ante non vīdĕrim, *My blindness not to have seen this before !*—Cic.

O *vim maximam* errōris, *O the enormous power of error !*—Cic.

Eheu *mē* mĭsĕrum, *O hapless me !*

Pro deōrum atque hŏmĭnum *fĭdem! In the name of gods and men !* —Cic.

En quătuor *āras, Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative: as, Ecce tuae lĭterae (sc. *sunt*) de Varrōne, *There is your letter about Varro!* —Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative: **as,** Vae *victis, Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

Hei mĭsĕro *mihi, Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

6. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to : as,

Hannĭbal, *adversum fĕmur* grăvĭter ictus, cĕcĭdit, *Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv.

Equus trĕmit artūs, *The horse trembles in its limbs.*—Virg.

Fēmĭnae nūdae *brāchia et lăcertos, Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Tac.

Trājectus *pĕdes, With the feet pierced.*—Virg.

> *Obs.* In prose, the Ablative is more generally used : as,
> Pĕdĭbus aeger, *Diseased in the feet.*—Cic.
>
> Capti ŏcŭlis talpae, *Moles maimed in the eyes* (i.e. *blind*).—Virg.

7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative : as, induor, ămĭcior, *I clothe, put on myself;* exuor, *I strip off* (*from myself*); cingor, accingor, *I gird on myself;* and the like : as,

Inūtĭle *ferrum cingĭtur, He girds on the bootless steel.*—Virg.

Andrŏgei *găleam induĭtur, He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—Virg.

8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (id, hoc, illud, ĭdem, &c.), and of Adjectives implying number (unum, multa, pauca, &c.), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words : as,

Idem glōriāri, *To make the same boast.*—Cic.

Omnes mŭlĭĕres *eădem* stŭdent, *All women have the same inclinations.*—Ter.

Id ŏpĕram do, *I strive after this.*—Ter.

Utrumque laetor, *I rejoice at both things.*—Cic.

Discĭpŭlos *id ūnum* mŏneo, *I remind pupils of this one thing.*—Cic.

Saepe non audimus ea, *quae* ab nātūră mŏnēmur, *We often do not hear those things, which we are reminded by nature.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.
>
> *Obs.* 2. The same construction is used even without verbs : as,
> *Id* tempŏris, *At that time.*—Cic.
> Hŏmo id aetātis, *A man of that age.*—Cic.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions **magnam (maxĭmam) partem**, *for the most part* ; **vĭcem**, *on account of* ; **sĕcus, sex** ; **cētĕra**, *in other respects* : as,

Suēvi *maxĭmam partem* lacte atque pĕcŏre vīvunt, *The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

Tuam vĭcem saepe dŏleo, *I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

Lībĕrōrum căpĭtum *vĭrile sĕcus* ad dĕcem millia capta, *Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

Vir cētĕra ēgrĕgius, *A man illustrious in other respects.*—Liv.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see § 507.

Appendix on the Construction of the Names of Towns.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where ? Whither ? Whence ?*

1. Answer to the Question Where ?

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where ?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular ; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition : as,

Rōmae Consŭles, *Athēnis* Archontes, *Carthāgĭne* Suffētes, sive jŭdĭces, quŏtannis creābantur, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*—Nep.

Tībŭre Rōmam ămo, *When at Tivoli I am in love with Rome.*—Hor.

Thēbis, Argis, Ulŭbris, At Thebes, Argos (Argi), Ulubrae.—Hor.

Diŏnȳsius *Cŏrinthi* puĕros dŏcēbat, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.* —Cic.

> *Obs.* It is probable, however, that these cases were originally *Locatives*, a case with the termination i in the Singular. This accounts for the form *ae* in the 1st Declension, which was originally *ai*, for the form *i* in the 2nd Declension, and for such forms as *Carthāgĭni*, Lacedaemŏni, rūri in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where ?* Hence ruri rather than rūre, *in the country.* See § 258.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives : **dŏmi**, *at home* ; **hŭmi**, *on the ground* ; **rūre**, more frequently **rūri**, *in the country* ; **mīlĭtiae, belli**, *in the field* : as,

Vir *dŏmi* non sōlum sed etiam Rōmae clārus, *A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.*—Liv.

Non eădem *dŏmi* quae *mīlĭtiae* fortūna ĕrat plēbi Rōmānae, *The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.*—Liv.

Vir *dŏmi bellī*que fortissĭmus, *A man most valiant at home and in the field.*—Vell.

Forte ēvēnit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus, *It so happened that we were in the country.*—Cic.

> *Obs. Domi* is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae,* and *alienae;* but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illā dŏmo; in dŏmo publĭcā; in dŏmo Caesăris.*

2. Answer to the Question Whither?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

Cŭrius prīmus ĕlĕphantos quātuor *Rōmam* duxit, *Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pausaniam cum classe commūni *Cyprum atque Hellespontum* misērunt, *They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* 1. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally : as,
> Ităliam vēnit, *To Italy he came.*—Virg.
> Verba rĕfers *aures* non pervĕnientia nostras, *Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

§ 260. The Accusatives dŏmum, *home;* and rus, *to the country,* have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

Sĕmel ēgressi, nunquam *dŏmum* rĕvertêre, *Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

Ego *rus* ībo, atque ĭbi mănēbo, *I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

3. Answer to the Question Whence?

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Diŏnȳsius Plătōnem *Athēnis* arcessīvit, *Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

Dēmărātus, Tarquĭnii rēgis păter, Tarquĭnios *Cŏrintho* fūgit, *Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

Chapter XXXVII.—The Genitive.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

Obs. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English *from* or *of:* it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

A. Genitive after Substantives.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

Bellum Pyrrhi, *The war of* or *with Pyrrhus.*
Sĭmŭlātio ămīcĭtiae, *The pretence of friendship.*
Nāvis auri, *A ship of,* i.e. *laden with, gold.*
(But *a ship [made] of gold* would be navis aurea or navis ex auro facta.)

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon causā, grātiā, ergō, *for the sake* (*of*), which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

Vŏluptātes ŏmittuntur *majōrum vŏluptātum ădĭpiscendārum* causā, *Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.*—Cic.
Dŏlōres suscĭpiuntur *majōrum dŏlōrum effŭgiendōrum* grātiā, *Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.*—Cic.
Sī quĭd contrā ălias lēges *hūjus lēgis* ergō factum est, *If anything has been done against other laws for the sake of this law.*

Obs. 1. Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with causā and grātiā: as, meā causā, *for my sake;* tuā causā, *for thy sake.*

Obs. 2. In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable **instăr**, *instead of, like:* as,

Instăr *montis* ĕquus, *A horse like a mountain.*—Virg.
Plăto mĭhi ūnus instăr est *omnium, Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.*—Cic.

1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor,* or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs:—

Grăves *Cyclōpum* offĭcīnae, *The heavy forges of the Cyclops.*—Hor.
In umbrōsis *Hĕlĭcōnis* ōris, *In the shady regions of Helicon.*—Hor.

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after

E.

dence of a
, which is
mes a Verb.

in, in English
rom, a meaning

denote the
: as,

auro facta.)

grātiā, ergō,
ve usually

irum causā,
ures.—Cic.
ātiā, Suffer-
s.—Cic.
If anything

ssessive Pro-
e; tuā causā,

able instăr,

inion, worth

ssessor.

e person

s.—Hor.
.—Hor.

ed after

the verb **sum**, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed :—

Omnia sunt *victōris*, *All things are* (*the property*) *of the conqueror* (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

Mīlĭtum est dŭci pārēre, *It is* (*the duty*) *of soldiers to obey the general*.

Nĭhĭl est tam *angusti ănĭmi* quam ămāre dīvĭtias, *Nothing is* (*the characteristic*) *of so petty a mind as the love of riches.*—Cic.

Cūjusvis hŏmĭnis est errāre, *It is* (*the part*) *of any man to err.*—Cic.

Obs. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns : thus we must say, meum est, *it is mine* or *my duty ;* tuum est, *it is thine* or *thy duty ;* not mei, tui est.

2. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after Substantives, to denote the whole whereof a part is taken : as,

Magna vīs *auri*, *A great quantity of gold.*—Cic.

Mŏdius *trītĭci, A peck of wheat.*—Cic.

Multaque pars *mei* vītābit Lĭbĭtīnam, *And an ample part of me shall evade the tomb.*—Hor.

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is often found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns used substantively.
These Adjectives are :

> tantum, quantum, ălĭquantum,
> multum, plus, plūrĭmum,
> nĭhĭl,* mĭnŭs, mĭnĭmum,
> dīmĭdium, paullum, rĕlĭquum.

> * Nihil is however always a Substantive.

The Pronouns are :

> hoc, ĭdem, illud, id,
> quidquam, ălĭquod, *and* quid.

They are used as Substantives only in the Nominative and Accusative, and must not depend upon Prepositions : as,

Plūs *vīrium, More of strength.*—Sen.

Quidquam *nŏvi, Anything new.*—Cic.

Nĭhil hūmānārum rērum, *No human affairs.*—Cic.

Quantum *incrēmenti* Nīlus căpit, tantum *spei* in annum est, *So much rise as the Nile undergoes, just so much hope is there for the harvest.*—Sen.

Obs. But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive : hence we have ălĭquid diffĭcĭle, *something difficult ;* ălĭquid diffĭcĭlius, *something more difficult.*

G 3

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of *Quantity,** *Place*, or *Time*, used Substantively : as,

Sătis *ĕlŏquentiae, săpientiae* părum, *Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.*—Sall.

Ubīnam *gentium*
Ubi *terrārum* } *Where in the world?*—Cic.

Eo *mĭsĕriārum, To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall.

Postea *lŏci, Afterwards.*—Liv.

Inde *loci, Thereupon.*—Lucr.

* These Adverbs are :

sătis,	*enough.*	ăbunde,	} *abundantly.*
părum,	*too little.*	affătim,	

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives : as,

Mājor *jŭvĕnum, (Thou) elder of the youths.*—Hor.

Maxĭme *princĭpum, Greatest of princes!*—Hor.

Graecōrum *ōrātorum* praestantissĭmi, *The most eminent of Greek orators.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex, de,* and in certain cases *in, inter,* are used : as,

Acerrĭmus *ex omnĭbus nostris sensĭbus* est sensus vĭdendi, *The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic.

Croesus *inter rēges* ŏpŭlentissĭmus, *Croesus, wealthiest among kings.*—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Numerals, and Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number : as,

Prīmi *jŭvĕnum, First of the youths.*—Virg.

Consŭlum alter, *one of the two consuls.*—Liv.

3. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318) : as,

(Vir) priscae ac nĭmis dūrae *sĕvērĭtatis, A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity.*—Liv.

Ager quattuor *jūgerûm, A farm of four acres.*—Liv.

Vir maxĭmi *corpŏris, A man of very great stature.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective : thus, *a man of talent* is hŏmo ingĕniōsus (not hŏmo ingĕnii) ; but *a man of great talent* is hŏmo magni ingĕnii.

B. Genitive after Adjectives.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying *capacity*; also of *desiring, experience, remembering, participating, fullness,* and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

Thĕmistocles *pĕrĭtissĭmos belli nāvālis* Athēnienses fēcit, *Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.*—Nep.

Omnes *immĕmŏrem bĕnĕfĭcii* ōdērunt, *All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.*—Cic.

Ira *impŏtens sui* est, *Anger is incapable of governing itself.*—Sen.

Hŏmo *partĭceps* est *rătiōnis* et *cōgĭtātiōnis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.*—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive :—

1. ăvārus,	*covetous.*	rŭdis,	*unskilled.*
ăvĭdus,	*greedy.*	insŏlens,	
cŭpĭdus,	*eager.*	insŏlĭtus,	}*unaccustomed.*
stŭdiōsus,	*fond.*	insuētus,	
fastīdiōsus,	*disdainful.*	compos,	*master of.*
invĭdus,	*jealous.*	impos,	*not master.*
tĭmĭdus,		pŏtens,	*powerful.*
păvĭdus,	}*fearful.*	impŏtens,	*not powerful.*
lībĕrālis,	*liberal.*		
prŏfūsus,	*lavish.*	3. mĕmor,	*mindful.*
parcus,	*stingy.*	immĕmor,	*unmindful.*
		cūriōsus,	*careful.*
2. pĕrītus,	*skilled.*	incūriōsus,	*careless.*
impĕrītus,	*unskilled.*		
conscius,	*conscious.*	4. partĭceps,	*participating.*
inscius,		consors,	*sharing.*
nescius,	}*ignorant.*	exsors,	
praescius,	*foreknowing.*	expers,	}*not sharing.*
gnārus,	*knowing.*	ĭnops,	*weak.*
ignāɪ ʼ,	*not knowing.*		
prūdeɴ,	*foreseeing.*	5. plēnus,	*full.*
imprūdens,	*not foreseeing.*	ĭnānis,	*empty.*

Verbal Adjectives in **ax** follow the above rule : as, ĕdax, *devouring*; căpax, *holding.*

Obs. Rŭdis and *prūdens* are also used with *in* and the Ablative : as, prūdens in jūre cīvīli, *skilful in civil law.*—Cic.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus pătiens (*adj.*) *lăbōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; pătiens (*part.*) *lăbōres*, (*actually*) *enduring them*: as,

Epămīnondas ădeo fuit *vērĭtātis dīlĭgens,* ut ne jŏcc quĭdem mentīrētur, *Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.*—Nep.

Aliēni appĕtens, sui prŏfūsus, *Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.*—Sall.

C. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive: as,

Anĭmus mĕmĭnit *praetĕrĭtōrum, The mind remembers the past.*—Cic.

Nec unquam oblīviscar *illĭus noctis, Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic.

2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after V⸱⸱⸱ ⸱⸱accusing, condemning, and *acquitting,* to denote the Cha⸱⸱⸱ ⸱⸱s,

Accusātus est *prōdĭtiōnis, He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.*—Nep.

Jūdex absolvit *injūriārum* eum, *The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.*—Auct. ad Her.

Absens *prōdĭtiōnis* damnātus est, *He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* 1. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de:* as,
>> Appius *de pĕcuniis rĕpĕtundis* est postŭlātus, *Appius was impeached for extortion.*—Cic.
>> This is the only admissible construction in the case of vis, *violence:* as, de vi postulare, damnare, &c.

> *Obs.* 2. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned:* as, *reus, noxius, innoxius, insons, mănĭfestus,* and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

Căpĭtis hŏmĭnem condemnare, *To condemn a man to death.*—Cic.

Octŭpli damnāri, *To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.*—Cic

> *Obs.* The Ablative is also used: as, *căpĭte* damnāre.—Cic.

3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price* or *Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as **tanti, quanti, plūris, mĭnōris:** as,

Quanti Chrysŏgŏnus dŏcet, *At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?*—Juv.

Plūris, mĭnōris, vendĕre, *To sell for less or more.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. But a *definite* price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316; and even the Ablatives *magno, parvo, plūrĭmo, mĭnĭmo,* &c. are of frequent occurrence.

> *Obs.* 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *flocci, pĭli, nauci, assis,* to denote that a thing is of *no value at all:* especially in the phrases flocci, pĭli făcĕre, pendĕre, &c., *"not to care a straw for."*

4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs **mĭsĕreor, mĭsĕresco,** *to pity ;* and the Impersonals **mĭsĕret, mĭserescit, mĭsĕrētur,** *it causes pity ;* **pĭget,** *it vexes ;* **poenĭtet,** *it repenteth ;* **pŭdet,** *it causes shame ;* **taedet, pertaesum est,** *it causes weariness,* govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion : as,

O virgo, mĭsĕrēre *mei,* O maiden, have pity on me!—Ov.

Me pĭget *stultĭtiae* meae, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

Nunquam *suscepti nĕgōtii* Attĭcum pertaesum est, *Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative : see § 241.

> *Obs.* 2. Mĭsĕror, and commĭsĕror *to commiserate,* follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

5. Genitive with interest and Rēfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs **interest** and **rēfert,** *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person *to whom* a thing is of *importance* or *benefit* : as,

Quid *Milōnis* interĕrat interfĭci Clōdium, *What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic.

Rēfert *compŏsĭtiōnis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.*—Quint.

> *Obs.* 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, being used instead : as,
>
> Quid *tuā* id rēfert, *What matters that to you?*—Ter.
>
> *Vestrā* interest commĭlĭtōnes, *It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.*—Tac.

> NOTE.—*Rēfert* probably = rei fert, *it contributes to the interest ;* and with interest, rei may be understood : in that case the forms meā, tuā, &c. may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with rei.

> *Obs.* 2. *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with meā, tuā, &c.

> *Obs.* 3. The subject of *interest* (and *rēfert*) is never a Substantive, but is usually expressed by an Infinitive word or clause.

D. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal ; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.*) : as,

Dēsĭne mollium tandem *quĕrēlārum, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor.

Sŏlūtus *ŏpĕrum, Released from toil.*—Hor

Chapter XXXVIII.—The Dative.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Remoter Object*, as distinguished from the *Immediate Object ;* the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234) : as,

Aesōpo quidam lăpĭdem *impēgĕrat, A person had cast a stone at Aesop.*—Phaedr.

> Obs. Here the *immediate object* of the action is the *stone* (lapidem) which *is cast ;* while the Dative *Aesopo* denotes the *remoter object*, or the person *to whom* the action has reference.

A. Dative after Verbs.

1. Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.

(*Dătīvus Commŏdi or Incommŏdi.*)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for, for the good of* : as,

Dŏmus *dŏmĭnis* aedĭfĭcātur, non *mūrĭbus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*—Cic.

Non *schŏlae* sed *vitae* discĭmus, *We learn not for the school, but for life.*—Sen.

Non sōlum *nōbis* dīvĭtes esse vŏlŭmus, *We wish not to be rich for ourselves only.*—Cic.

> Obs. 1. When *for* signifies *in defence of, in behalf of,* **pro** must be used : as, mŏri pro patriā, *to die for one's country ;* dīcĕre pro ălĭquo, *to speak for any one* (i. e. *in behalf of any one*).
>
> Obs. 2. The Dativus Commodi is also used after Adjectives : see § 298.

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus **văco**, *to be free*, signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it ;* **nŭbo**, *to cover* or *veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself* or *put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry ;* **supplĭco**, *to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person :* as,

Phĭlŏsŏphiae semper văco, *I always find leisure to study philosophy.*—Cic.

Vĕnus nupsit *Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.*—Cic.

Caesări pro te lĭbentissĭme supplĭcābo, *I will most willingly supplicate Caesar for you.*—Cic.

> Obs. Of course *nŭbo* is used only of a woman marrying.

by the
Remoter
ject ; the

t Aesop.—

n) which is
e person to

ge.

of Verb

lt for its

l, but for

h for our-

e used : as,
speak for

298.

ally do
to ex-
nething
ith the
t ; nŭbo,
ce to a
ence to
ative to

ilosophy.

y suppli-

2 Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with *interest* ($\check{\eta}\theta o\varsigma$) by some person : as,

Quid *mihi* Celsus ăgit, *How does my friend Celsus ?*—Hor.

Hic Mărius věniet *tibi* ŏrīgĭne parvā, *Here shall come your Marius, of stock obscure.*—Sil.

Obs. The *Dativus Ethicus* is a more delicate shade of the *Dativus Commodi.*

3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the Dativus Commodi or Incommodi :

1. *To assist :* subvěnio, succurro, auxĭlior.

2. *To resist, oppose :* rěsisto, adversor, obnītor, rěnītor, rěpugno, obsum, &c.

3. *To favour, study (be devoted to) :* făveo, indulgeo, stŭdeo.

4. *To envy, be jealous of :* invĭdeo, aemŭlor (see *Obs.* 4).

5. *To please :* plăceo, arrīdeo.

6. *To serve, obey, benefit :* păreo, ŏbēdio, obtempěro, servio, prōsum.

7. *To trust* or *distrust :* crēdo, fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo.

8. *To spare, refrain from :* parco, tempěro.

9. *To advise, persuade :* suādeo, persuādeo.

10. *To flatter :* adūlor, assentor, blandior.

11. *To cure :* mĕdeor, mēdĭcor.

12. *To pardon :* ignosco.

13. *To congratulate :* grātŭlor.

14. *To revile :* mălĕdīco, obtrecto, convīcior.

15. *To be angry :* īrascor, succenseo.

16. *To protect :* patrōcĭnor.

17. *To command :* impěro, impěrĭto, praecĭpio, and some-times dŏmĭnor, mŏdĕror, tempěro.

<div align="right">With some others.</div>

Hŏmĭnes *hŏmĭnĭbus* plūrĭmum et *prōsunt* et obsunt, *Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

Līber is est existĭmandus, qui nulli *turpĭtūdĭni servit, That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.

Non līcet sui commŏdi causā, *nŏcēre alteri*, *It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Dēmosthĕnes ējus ipsīus artis, *cui stŭdēbat*, prīmam lītĕram non pŏtĕrat dīcĕre, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.*—Cic.

Antiŏchus se nec *impensae*, nec *lăbōri*, nec *pĕrīcŭlo parsūrum* pollĭcē-bātur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Mĕdĭci tōto corpŏre cūrando, *mĭnĭmae ĕtiam parti mĕdentur*, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Prŏbus *invĭdet nēmĭni*, *The good man envies no one.*—Cic.

Epĭcūrus *Phaedōni* turpissĭme *mălĕdixit*, *Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.*—Cic.

Quis *Isocrăti* est *adversătus* impensius (quam Aristŏtĕles), *Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?*

Iis aemŭlāmur qui ea hăbeant quae nos hăbēre cŭpiāmus, *We are jealous of those who have what we want.*—Cic.

Omnĭbus *gentĭbus* ac *nātiōnĭbus impĕrāre*, *To rule over all peoples and nations.*—Cic.

Mŏdĕrāri *ănĭmo* et *ōrātioni* cum sis īrātus, *To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally : as, mĭhi invĭdētur, *I am envied.* See § 234, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. Jŭvo and adjŭvo, *I assist*, always govern the Accusative : as,

Multum pŏtes *nos* ăpud Plancum jŭvăre, *You are able greatly to help me with Plancus.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. Mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor, *I heal;* and ădūlor, *I flatter*, have sometimes the Accusative and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemŭlor, in sense of to *rival, emulate*, is always followed by an Accusative :

Me *Agămemnŏnem* aemŭlari pŭtas, *You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.*—Nep.

Obs. 5. Jŭbeo, rĕgo, and gŭberno are always followed by the Accusative : as,

O dīva grātum quae *rĕgis Antium*, *O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium !*—Hor.

Spērāre *nos* ămĭci jŭbent, *Our friends bid us hope.*—Cic.

Obs. 6. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative : as,

Haec nobis convĕniunt, *These things agree with us.*
Convĕnīre aliquem, *To have an interview with any one.*
Mĕtuo, tĭmeo te, *I fear you.*
———— tibi, *I am apprehensive for you.*
Consŭlo te, *I consult you.*
———— tĭbi, *I consult for your interests.*
Prospĭcio, and provĭdeo te, *I see you at a distance.*
———— tĭbi, *I consult for your interests.*
Căveo te or a te, *I am on my guard against you.*
———— tĭbi, *I am concerned for your safety.*
Tempĕro, mŏdĕror aliquid, *to regulate, arrange.*
———— mihi, irae, &c., *to set bounds to, to check, restrain.*

4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

§ 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter

ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern the Dative, when the Preposition retains its original
force in reference to an object. Transitive verbs have
also an Accusative case in addition : as,

Tu *mĭhi* terram *in*-jĭce, *Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).*—Virg.

Delphīnes altis *in*-cursant *rāmis, The dolphins course against the high
branches.*—Ov.

In-cŭbuit *tŏro, She leaned upon her couch.*—Virg.

Quum prŏpĕmŏdo *mūris* ɔc-cessisset, *When he had almost got up to
the walls.*—Liv.

Caesărī vĕnienti *oc*-currit, *He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.*—
Caes.

Quum virtūte *omnĭbus prae*-stārent, *Whereas they (the Helvetii) sur-
passed all in valour.*—Caes.

Nātūra hŏmĭnis *pĕcŭdĭbus antĕ*-cēdit, *The nature of man excels brute
beasts.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo, inspergo, circumdo,* have two
> constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the
> person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing : as,
>
> Circumdăre brachia collo, *To put the arms about any one's neck.*—Ov.
>
> Oppĭdum vallo et fossā circumdăre, *To surround a town with a rampart
> and moat.*—Cic.

5: Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the *Perfect* Tenses
Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the
Ablative : as,

Mĭhi consĭlium *captum* jam diu *est, My plan has been already long
formed.*—Cic.

Cui non *sunt auditae* Demosthĕnis vĭgĭliae, *Who is there to whom
the night-watchings of Demosthenes are a thing unheard?*—Cic.

> *Obs.* The Dative is by the Poets used with *all* tenses of the Passive Verb ; as,
>
> Barbărus hīc ĕgo sum quia non intellĭgor *ulli, Here I am a barbarian,
> inasmuch as I am understood by none.*—Ov.
>
> Nĕque cernĭtur *ulli, Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).*—Virg.

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive
Participle with the Verb *esse,* to denote the Agent : as,

Quod *fĕrendum est* mollĭter *săpienti, Which the wise man must bear
gently.* —Cic.

Semper ĭta vīvāmus, ut rătiōnem *reddendam* (esse) *nōbis* arbĭtrēmur,
Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.—
Cic.

6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs lĭcet, *it is lawful*; lĭbet, *it pleases*; **expĕdit**, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

Lĭcet nēmĭni dūcĕre exercĭtum contrā patriam, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

Ei lĭbēbit, quod non lĭcet (ei), *It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* After lĭcet, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse*; as,
>
> Lĭcuit esse Themist॰ll ōtiōso, *It was allowed Themistocles to be inactive.* —Cic.
>
> Illis tĭmĭdis et ignāvis lĭcet esse, *It is for them to be timid and cowardly.* —Liv.

7. Dative with the Verb Sum.

§ 296. The Verb **sum** with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

Mĭhi est injusta nŏverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.
Trōja huic lŏco nòmen est, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

> *Obs.* When, as in the last example, a *name* is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as,
>
> Scĭpio, cui Afrĭcāno cognōmen ex virtūte fuit, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.
>
> In campis, quĭbus nōmen ĕrat *Raudiis*, dēcertāvĕre, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.*—Vell.

8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (Dativus Commodi, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying *to be* or *become*; *to give*, *send* or *come*; *to impute* or *reckon, &c.*: as,

Flūmen ăliis verbōrum cordi est, *A flood of words is the gratification of others.*—Cic.

Ampla dŏmus saepe *fit dŏmĭno dēdĕcŏri*, *A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic.

Pausanias rex Lacĕdaemŏniōrum vēnit Attĭcis auxĭlio, *Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.*—Nep.

Nec tĭmuit sibi nē vĭtio quis vertĕret, *Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor.

Cui bŏno fuit, *For whose advantage was it?*—Cic.

> *Obs.* The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person: as,
>
> Nec eam rem hăbuit relĭgiōni, *Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic.
>
> Magno ŏdio esse apud ălĭquem, *To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.*—Cic.

B. Dative after Adverbs and Adjectives.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a Dativus Commodi, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives :—

1. *Of Utility :* ūtĭlis, commŏdus, fructuōsus, &c.

2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury :* ĭnūtĭlis, noxius.

3. *Of Fitness :* aptus, accommŏdātus, ĭdōneus, convĕniens, proprius, &c.

4. *Of Unfitness :* incommŏdus, inconvĕniens.

5. *Of Acceptableness :* grātus, jūcundus, cārus.

6. *Of Displeasure :* ingrātus, injūcundus.

7. *Of Friendliness :* bĕnignus, ămīcus, bĕnĕvŏlus, fĭdēlis, fĭdus.

8. *Of Hostility :* ĭnĭmīcus, pernĭciōsus, mălĕvŏlus, mălignus, mŏlestus, īrātus, infestus.

9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity :* sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis.

10. *Of Equality and inequality :* aequālis, ĭnaequālis.

11. *Of Proximity :* fĭnĭtĭmus, vīcīnus, prŏpinquus.

Rōmŭlus *multĭtūdĭni grātior* fuit quam Patrĭbus, *Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv.

Deiotărus *fĭdēlis* erat *Pŏpŭlo Rōmāno, Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic.

Patriae sŏlum *omnĭbus cārum* est, *The soil of our country is dear to all.*—Cic.

Sĭcŭli *Verri* ĭnĭmīci infestique sunt, *The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.*—Cic.

Hŏmo aliēnissĭmus *mihi, A man most unfriendly to me.*—Cic.

Ingrātam Vĕnĕri pōne sŭperbiam, *Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.*—Hor.

Numquid *irātŭs* es *mihi* propter has res, *You are not angry with me for these things, are you?*—Pl.

Idque eo făcĭlius crēdēbātur quia *sĭmĭle vēro* vĭdēbātur, *And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.*—Cic.

Paupertātem *dīvĭtiis* ĕtiam inter hŏmĭnes esse *aequālem* vŏlŭmus, *We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *ămīcus, ĭnĭmicus, fĭnĭtĭmus, vīcīnus, prŏpinquus,* &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

> *Obs.* 2. *Sĭmĭlis* and *dissĭmĭlis* are quite as often found with the Genitive : as, Dĕcem sĭmĭles *Nestŏris, Ten men the like of Nestor.*—Cic.
> Impii cīves, *tui* dissĭmillĭmi, *Impious citizens most unlike yourself.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 3. An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to th Dative as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad :* as,
> *Multas ad res* perūtĭles (*nōbis*) Xĕnŏphontis libri sunt, *The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.*—Cic.

Chapter XXXIX.—The Ablative.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action: as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from, by, with, in:* as,

Trōjae vēnit ab ōris, *He came from the coasts of Troy.*—Virg.

Fāto prŏfŭgus, *An exile by destiny.*—Virg.

Carthāgo, *stŭdiis* asperrĭma belli, *Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.*—Virg.

1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from.* See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from,* as a or ab, de, ex, sine, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See §§ 136, 137.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from;* but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) Vĕrēcundum Bacchum sanguĭneis *prŏhĭbēte rixis, Save ye honest Bacchus from blood-stained frays!*—Hor.

Nōdōsā corpus *prŏhĭbēre chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.*—Hor.

Lībĕrāre ălĭquem *culpā, To free a man from blame.*—Cic.

Vercingĕtŏrix *oppugnātiōne destĭtit,Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.* —Caes.

(B.) Ab oppĭdis vim hostium *prŏhĭbent, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.*—Caes.

Vĭri bŏni lăpĭdĭbus *a fŏro pellēbantur, Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.*—Cic.

Eum ab omni errātiōne lībĕrāvit, *He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (But *lībĕro* is quite *as* frequent with the abl. alone.)

§ 307. The Ablative is used after Adjectives denoting *freedom* or *exemption from* : as,

Rōbustus ănĭmus *omni* est *liber cūrā*, *The strong mind is free from all anxiety.*—Cic.

Fāmā atque *fortūnis* expertes, *Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall.

§ 308. ŏpus est, *there is need*, like verbs of want, governs the Ablative : as,

Auctōrĭtāte nōbis ŏpus est, *We have need of authority.*—Cic.

Opus est mātūre *facto*, *There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall.

2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles nātus, *born from*; ortus, ŏriundus, *sprung from*; gĕnĭtus, *begotten of*: also in the Poets with sătus, ēdĭtus, creātus, crētus, *sprung from* or *begotten of*: as,

Jŏve nātus et *Maiā*, *Born of Jove and Maia.*—Cic.

Orte *Sāturno*, *O thou offspring of Saturn !*—Hor.

Quo sanguĭne crētus, *From what blood (family) sprung.*—Virg.

Albā ŏriundum săcerdōtium, *A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv.

> *Obs.* But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to *more remote* origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition : as,
>
> Hippocrătes et Epicȳdes, nāti Carthāgĭne, sed ŏriundi *ab* Syrăcūsis, *Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv.
>
> Belgae *orti* sunt *a* Germānis, *The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes.

3. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Means*, or *Instrument* of an Action or state of being: as,

Sol cuncta *suā lūce* illustrat et complet, *The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

Helvētii rĕlĭquos Gallos *virtūte* praecēdunt, *The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes.

(Britanni) *ĕquĭtātu* atque *essēdis* ad flūmen progressi (sunt), *The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

Epămīnondas princeps *meo jŭdĭcio* Graeciae, *Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

Ennius fuit mājor *nātu* quam Plautus et Naevius, *Ennius was earlier in his period of birth than Plautus and Naevius.*—Cic.

Cornĭbus tauri, apri *dentĭbus, morsu* leónes, se tūtantur, *Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (their) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* Hence the Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the *thing* by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a *person,* the preposition a or ab is required with the Ablative : see § 234, *Obs.* 1. By the poets, however, the Ablative is sometimes used alone : as,
>
> > Scrībēris Vărio, *Thou shalt be written of by Varius.*—Hor.

§ 312.   1. If the *manner* in which anything is done, be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without cum:

2. But if the *manner* is expressed by a Substantive alone, cum must be used : as,

Miltiădes res Chersonēsi *summā* aequĭtāte constĭtuit, *Miltiades arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

Athēnienses *cum silentio* audīti sunt, *The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

> *Obs.* 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mŏdus, rătio, mos, rītus, con-suētūdo,* never take the preposition cum : as, hoc modo, *in this manner ;* Persārum mōre, *after the custom of the Persians.*
>
> *Obs.* 2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with,* cum is always used ; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword,* cum cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, ardēre stŭdio, *to burn with zeal ;* exsultāre gaudio, *to exult with joy ;* intĕrīre (pĕrīre, mŏri) făme, *to die of hunger ;* gaudēre (laetāri) ămīci adventu, *to rejoice at the arrival of a friend;* glōriāri victōriā suā, *to boast of his victory ;* confīdĕre nātūrā lŏci, *to trust in the nature of the ground :* as,

Dēlicto dŏlēre, *correctiōne* gaudēre, nos ŏportet, *We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.*—Cic.

Nōmĭnĭbus vĕtĕrum glŏriantur, *They glory in the names of the ancients.*—Cic.

§ 314. The Adjectives, which express a state of the feelings, are followed by an Ablative of the Cause : as, contentus, *contented,* laetus, *rejoicing,* sŭperbus, *proud,* frētus, *relying on,* and, less frequently, moestus, *sorrowful,* anxius, *anxious :* as,

Frētus *diligentiā vestrā,* dissĕro brĕvius, *Relying on your diligence, I treat (the matter) more briefly.*—Cic.

Paucis contentus, *Content with little.*—Hor.

Phoebe sŭperbe *lўra, Thou Phoebus who takest pride in thy lyre!*—Tib.

> *Obs.* For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, vescor, nītor, pŏtior,** with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

Săpiens *rătiōne* optĭme *ŭtĭtur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.*—Cic.

Plŭrĭmis mărĭtĭmis *rēbus* frŭĭmur atque *ŭtĭmur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.*—Cic.

Agēsĭlāus *magnā* est praedā pŏtītus, *Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pŏtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).
>
> *Obs.* 2. *Pŏtior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pŏtīri,* to obtain the *management of affairs.*—Cic.

§ 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging;* and the Adjectives **cārus,** *dear,* and **vīlis,** *cheap,* are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

Lycurgus *ĕmi* singŭla non *pĕcūniā,* sed *compensātiōne* mercium, *Lycurgus directed that things should be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.*—Justin.

Vīginti *tălentis* ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrătes *vendĭdit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

Quod non ŏpus est, *asse carum* est, *What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit., at an as).—Cic.

Mūtat quadrāta *rŏtundis, He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *muto,* either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

> *Obs.* 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the *means* by which a thing is obtained.
>
> *Obs.* 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281.
>
> > EXCEPTIONS.—But the Ablatives magno, *at a high price;* permagno, plŭrĭmo, *at a very high price;* nĭmio, *at too high a price;* parvo, *at a low price;* mĭnĭmo, *for a very low price;* nĭhilo, *for nothing;* are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing,* without a Substantive: as,
> >
> > Permagno dĕcŭmas vendĭdisti, *You farmed the dues* (tenths) *out at a very high rate.*—Cic.
> >
> > Non pŏtest *parvo* res magna constare, *A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.
>
> *Obs.* 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fullness* or *want* govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

Germānia *rīvis flūmĭnĭbusque* ăbundat, *Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.

Neptūnus *ventis* implēvit vēla *sĕcundis*, *Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

Vŏluptāte virtus saepe căret, nunquam indĭget, *Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).*—Sen.

Cēra rĕferta nŏtis, *A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* and *want* rarely govern the Genitive; but Adjectives more frequently govern the Genitive than the Ablative: see § 276. *Indĭgeo*, however, usually takes the Genitive: as, aeris indĭgēre, *to want money.*

Obs. 2. The Verbs *affĭcĕre, instruĕre, ornāre,* &c., come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

   Praedā affēcit pŏpŭlāres suos, *He has enriched his countrymen with booty.*—Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Praedĭtus, endowed with,* also governs the Ablative: as,

   Mens est praedĭta *mōtu* sempĭterno, *The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

Caesar fuisse trādĭtur *excelsā stătūrā, cŏlōre candĭdo, tĕrĕtĭbus membris,* *Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.*—Suet.

   Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality,* see § 274, *Obs.* 1.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

Nĭhil est *ōtiōsā sĕnectūte* (= *quam* otiosa senectus) jūcundius, *Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.*—Cic.

Tullus Hostīlius *Rōmŭlo* (= *quam* Romulus) fuit fĕrōcior, *T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.*—Liv.

Scīmus sōlem multo mājōrem esse *terrā* (quam terram), *We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.*—Cic.

   Obs. 1. The Ablative instead of *quam,* with the Object-Accusative, is rare in prose, when the Accusative is a Substantive, but frequent in poetry: as,

   Cur ŏlīvum *sanguĭne vīpĕrīno* (= quam sanguinem viperinum) cautius vītat, *Why does he avoid the olive-oil more cautiously than the viper's blood?*—Hor.

   Obs. 2. The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,

   Miltiădes ămīcior (fuit) omnium lībertāti *quam* suae dŏmĭnătiōni, *Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than to his own sovereign power.*—Nep.

Obs. 3. The use of the Ablatives *spe, exspectătiōne, ŏpīniōne, aequo, justo, sŏlĭto,* after the comparative, is peculiar, and must be explained by *quam est* or *erat :* as,

Opīniōne omnium mājōrem cēpi dŏlōrem, *I experienced greater grief than all thought I should* (lit. *greater than the opinion of all men*).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner **dignus,** *worthy,* and indignus, *unworthy,* govern the Ablative : as,

Virtus *ĭmĭtātiōne,* non *invĭdiā,* digna est, *Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.*—Cic.

Quam multi *lūce indigni* sunt, *How many are unworthy of the light of day!*—Sen.

6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words : as,

Turres *dēnis pĕdĭbus* quam mūri *altiōres* sunt, *The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.*—Curt.

Q. Pompēïus, *biennio* quam nos *major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years.*—Cic.

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingĕniōsior, *hoc* dŏcet lăbōriōsius, *The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.*—Cic.

7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition : as,

Plăto *ūno* et *octōgēsĭmo anno* scrībens est mortuus, *Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year.*—Cic.

Extrēmā puĕrĭtiā mīles fuit summi impĕrātōris, *In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.*—Cic.

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive the Preposition *in* is generally used : as,

Aurīgandi arte *in ădŏlescentiā* fuit clārus, *He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.*—Suet.

Ter *in anno, Thrice in the year.*—Cic.

Obs. The following Ablatives are exceptions : die, *by day ;* nocte, *by night* (but also *de die, de* nocte) ; vespĕre *s.* vespĕri, *in the evening ;* tempŏre, *in time, in season :* which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition in : as,

Agămemnon vix *dĕcem annis* ūnam cēpit urbem, *Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.*—Nep.

SM. L. G.

H

Sĕnātus dĕcrēvit, ut lēgāti Jŭgurthae *in diēbus proxĭmis dĕcem Ĭtăliā dēcēdĕrent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.*—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or *post* after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning:

Accusative.	*Ablative.*
ante *or* post tres annos	tribus annis ante *or* post.
„ post tertium annum	tertio anno ante *or* post.
tres ante *or* post annos	tribus ante *or* post annis.
tertium ante *or* post annum	tertio ante *or* post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

Annis quingentis et dĕcem post Rōmam condĭtam Līvius făbŭlam dĕdit, *Livius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of Rome.*—Cic.

Obs When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used:

Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) vēnĕrat.
Post tres annos quam vēnĕrat.
Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) vēnĕrat.
Post annum tertium quam vēnĕrat.

Or *post* may be omitted:

Tertio anno quam vēnĕrat.
All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come.*

8. Ablative of Place.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* dextrā, *on the right hand;* laevā, sĭnistrā, *on the left hand;* terrā mărique, *on sea and land;* bello, *in the field* (comp. § 258): as,

Intŏnuit *laevā, It thundered on the left hand.*—Virg.
*Terrā mări*que conquīrĕre, *To make search by sea and land.*—Cic.

§ 329. The following Substantives, lŏcus, terra, rĕgio, via, Iter, are frequently used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them: as,

Athēnienses *lŏco ĭdŏneo* castra fēcērunt, *The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep.

Aurēliā viā prŏfectus est, *He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective tōtus, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Quis *tōto mărī* lŏcus tūtus fuit, *What place was safe throughout all the sea ?*—Cic.

Tōtā Asiā, *Throughout all Asia.*—Cic.

§ 331. In all cases besides the above a Preposition must be used: as,

In Ităliā nullus exercĭtus (erat), *There was no army in Italy.*—Sall.

In hac sōlĭtūdĭne căreo omnium collŏquio, *In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,
>
>> *Silvisque agrisque viisque* corpŏra foeda jăcent, *O'er forest, field and highway the loathsome bodies lie.*—Ov.

9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute :* as,

His rebus cognĭtis, Caesar ad nāves rĕvertĭtur, *Having learnt these things* (lit., *these things having been learnt*), *Caesar returns to the fleet.*—Caes.

Pȳthăgŏras *Tarquĭnio Sŭperbo regnante* in Ităliam vēnit, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus* (lit. *Tarquinius Superbus reigning*).—Cic.

Ălĭquid *salvis ēgĭbus* ăgĕre, *To do a thing without breaking the laws.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

> *Obs.* 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,
>
> Caesar, *expŏsĭto exercĭtu,* ad hostes contendit, *Caesar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.*—Caes.

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause : as,

Nondum *comperto*, in quam rĕgionem vēnisset, *It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.*—Liv.

Excepto quod non sĭmul esses, cētĕra laetus, *This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.*—Hor.

Obs. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives audīto, cognĭto, comperto, and the like.

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle : as,

Nātus est Augustus, *M. Tullio Cĭcĕrōne* et *Antōnio* consŭlĭbus, *Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*—Suet.

Si *se invīto* transīre cōnārentur, *If they should attempt to cross against his will* (lit., *he being unwilling*).—Caes.

─────────

CHAPTER XL.—THE VOCATIVE.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to : as,

Recte te, *Cyre*, beātum fĕrunt, *With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.*—Cic.

Et tu, *Brūte*, *And thou too, Brutus!*

Obs. Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste,* &c., with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection **o**, especially in the Poets : as,

O lux Dardăniae, *O thou light of the land of Troy!*—Virg.

O dĕcus impĕrii; *O thou glory of the empire!*—Lucan.

Obs. This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250 : the Vocative is used only in *speaking to* or *invocation.*

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative : as,

Audi tu *pŏpŭlus Albānus, Hear, O thou people of Alba!*—Liv.

Obs. Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative ; for it is found even without Apposition : as,

Agĕdum *ponĭfex publĭcus* pŏpŭli Rōmāni, praei verba, *Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words!* —Liv.

Chapter XLI.—Adjectives.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons;* and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things :* as,

Omnes omnia bŏna dīcĕre, *All* (men) *say all kinds of good* (things).—Ter.

Parvum parva dĕcent, *Small* (things) *befit a small* (man).—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive hŏmo or res must be expressed: thus, multōrum hŏmĭnum, *of many persons ;* multārum rērum, *of many things.* [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things.*]

Obs. 2. Masculine Adjectives are mostly used in this way in the Plural: as, docti, *learned men.* But in the Singular vir or homo is usually added: as, homo doctus, *a learned man.*

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives.*—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with summus, *at the top, the top of ;* infĭmus or īmus, *at the bottom, the bottom of ;* mĕdius, *the middle ;* extrēmus, *last, at the end of ;* prīmus, *first, at the beginning of ;* rĕlĭquus, *remaining, the remainder of ;* dīmĭdiātus, *halved, the half of :* as,

Ad īmam quercum, *At the foot of an oak.*—Phaedr.
Unus dīmĭdiātusque mensis, *One month and a half.*—Cic.
Extrēmā hiĕme, *At the end of winter.*—Cic.
Rĕlĭqua vīta, *The rest of life.*—Cic.

Obs. But *relĭquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing tho Genitive : as, reliquum vitae (= reliqua vita), Liv.

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude : as,

Ego eum a me *invītissĭmus* dīmīsi, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*—Cic.

Plūs hŏdie bŏni *imprūdens* fēci, quam *sciens* ante hunc diem unquam, *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did wittingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most fre-
quently used in the above manner: invītus, *unwilling, un-
willingly*; laetus, *joyful, joyfully*; lībens = lībenter, *gladly, with
pleasure*; sciens, *knowing, knowingly*; imprūdens, *unwitting, un-
wittingly*; impĕrītus, *unskilled, unskilfully*: also, mātūtīnus, *in the
morning*; prōnus, *on one's face*; sŭpīnus, *on one's back*; sublīmis,
aloft.

§ 345. **Prior, prĭmus, postĕrior, postrēmus**, are used in agree-
ment with a Substantive, where in English a relative
clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

Hannĭbal *primus* cum exercĭtu Alpes transiit, *Hannibal was the first
who crossed the Alps with an army.*

Hispānia *postrēma* omnium prōvinciārum perdŏmĭta est, *Spain was
the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.*—Liv.

> *Obs.* The use of *prior, prĭmus,* and *postĕrior, postrēmus,* must be carefully
> distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius, prĭmum,* etc.
> The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of
> time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus
> primus dixit, means *he was the first who spoke;* primum dixit, *he first
> spoke, and then,* etc.

Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by
quam, the second member is put in the same case as the first,
when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

Neque hăbet [hĕrus meus] plus săpientiae quam lăpis, *Nor has he
[my master] any more sense than a stone (has).*—Pl.

Dĕcet nōbis cāriorem esse *patriam* quam *nosmetipsos, Our country
ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.*—Cic.

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed
by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb
sum must be used with the latter, though in English the
verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hŏmĭnis doctiōris quam *fuit Claudius,
These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.*—Gell.

Verres argentum reddĭdit L. Cordio, hŏmĭni non grātiōsiōri, quam
*Cn. Calidius est, Verres restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more
influential than Cn. Calidius.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is
> frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,
> Ego hŏmĭnem callĭdiŏrem vīdi nēmĭnem quam *Phormiōnem* (= quam
> Phormio est), *I have seen no man more cunning than Phormio.*—Ter.
> Patrem tam plăcĭdum reddo quam *ŏvem* (= quam ŏvis est), *I make my
> father as quiet as a sheep.*—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative,
with the omission of quam. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. **Plus** and **amplius**, *more*, and **minus**, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction : as,

Non *plus quam* quattuor millia effūgērunt (not effūgit), *Not more than four thousand escaped.*—Liv.

Pictores antīqui non sunt usi *plus* (not pluribus) *quam* quattuor cŏlōrĭbus, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.*—Cic.

Mĭnus duo millia hŏmĭnum ex tanto exercĭtu effūgērunt, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.*—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, **magis** is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree : as,

Corpŏra magna *măgis* quam firma, *Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—Liv.

Paulli contio fuit *vērior* quam *grātior* pŏpŭlo, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular.*—Liv.

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree : as,

Sĕnectus est nātūrā *lŏquācior, Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.* —Cic.

Vŏluptas, quum *mājor* est, omne ănĭmi lūmen exstinguit, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro :* as,
>
> > Proelium *atrōcius quam pro* nŭmĕro pugnantium, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.
>
> *Obs.* 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut :* as,
>
> > Mājor sum *quam cui* possit fortūna nŏcĕre, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—Ov.
> >
> > Damna *mājŏra* sunt *quam quae* aestĭmāri possint, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv.

§ 352. **Atque** and **ac** are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives : as,

Artius *atque* hĕdĕra, *More closely than ivy.*—Hor.

Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, **the** Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with **quam**, or in the case of maximus with **quantus** also, either with or without possum : as,

Jŭgurtha *quam maxĭmas* pŏtest cōpias armat, *Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

Tanta est inter eos, *quanta maxĭma* pŏtest esse mōrum stŭdiōrumque distantia, *There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.*—Cic.

Dīcam *quam brĕvissĭmē, I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

Obs. We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of :

1. Unus or unus omnium : as,

P. Scaevŏlam *ūnum* nostrae cīvĭtātis et ingĕnĭo et justĭtiā praestant-*issĭmum* audeo dīcĕre, *I venture to call P. Scaevola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.*—Cic.

Miltiădes et antīquĭtāte gĕnĕris et glōriā mājōrum *ūnus omnium maxĭmē* flōrēbat, *Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.*—Nep.

2. By longē or multo : as,

Alcĭbiădes omnium aetātis suae *multo formōsissĭmus* fuit, *Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam, qui* and the Superlative : as,

Tam sum mītis *quam qui lēnissĭmus*, (*i. e.* est), *I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

Tam sum ămīcus rĕipublicae *quam qui maxĭmē, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. "*All the best,*" "*all the wisest,*" and similar phrases are expressed by quisque with the Superlative : as,

Săpientissĭmus *quisque* acquissĭmo ănĭmo mŏrĭtur, *All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.*—Cic.

Altissĭma *quaeque* flūmĭna mĭnĭmo sŏno lābuntur, (*All) the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.*—Curt.

Chapter XLII.—Pronouns.

1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

Ego te lāudavi, *tu* me culpasti, *I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

Nos, nos consūles dēsūmus, *It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty)!*—Cic.

§ 359. The plural forms nostrum, vestrum, must be carefully distinguished from nostri, vestri. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with omnium. Thus *one of us* is unus nostrum (not unus nostri); *the wish of you all*, omnium vestrum (*not* vestri) voluntas.—Cic.

Obs. Nostri, vestri, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster, vester,* used abstractly. Thus, měmor nostri = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. *of us.*)

2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person.
(See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun sui, sĭbi, se, with the Possessive Pronoun suus, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

Nicias tuā *sui* měmoriā dēlectātur, *Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.*—Cic.

Bestiis hŏmĭnes ūti possunt ad *suam* ūtĭlĭtātem, *Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.*—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun suus in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

Hannĭbălem sui cīves ē cīvĭtāte ējēcērunt, *His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic.

Cătĭlīna admŏnēbat *ălium* ĕgestātis, *ălium* cŭpĭdĭtātis *suae, Catĭline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.*—Sall.

Sua cūjusque ănĭmantis natūra est, *Every living creature has its own nature.*—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, sui, sibi, se, and suus may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially

when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

(Prŏcŭlus) dixisse fertur, a se vīsum esse Rŏmŭlum, *Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vĕlit, illum ad se vĕnīre ŏportēre, *Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes.

3. Possessive Pronouns.   (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

Apud *mātrem* recte est, *All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.

De *frātre* conf īdo ĭta esse ut semper vŏlui, *As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

> *Obs.* The Possessive Pronouns often denote something *proper* or *favourable to :* as, suo loco, suo tempŏre, *at a favourable place or time.*

4. Demonstrative Pronouns.   (See § 78.)

§ 364. Hic is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me.* Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

Ŏpus vel in *hac* magnĭfĭcentiā urbis conspĭciendum, *A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

Qui *haec* vĭtŭpĕrāri vŏlunt, *Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

Sex. Stŏla, jūdex *hic* noster. *Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.* —Cic.

§ 365. Ille is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him* or *yonder.* Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

Ex suo regno sic Mithrĭdātes prŏfūgit, ut ex eōdem Ponto Mēdēa *illa* quondam prŏfūgisse dīcĭtur, *Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*— Cic.

§ 366. When hic and ille are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the *nearer*, *ille* to the *more remote :* as,

Caesar bĕnĕfĭciis atque mūnĭfĭcentiā magnus hăbēbātur, integrĭtāte vītae Cāto. *Ille* mansuētūdĭne et mĭserĭcordiā clarus factus, *huic* sēvērĭtas dignĭtātem addĭdĕrat, *Caesar was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, Cato for the spotlessness of his life.* The former *had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency :* on the latter *severity had conferred distinction.*—Sall.

§ 368. **Iste** is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you* or *that of yours* : as,

De *istis* rēbus exspecto tuas littĕras, *Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.*—Cic.

Ista ōrātio, *That speech (which you make).*—Cic.

§ 369. **Iste** often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent : as,

Iste vir optĭmus, *That excellent man of yours* (ironically).—Cic.

Obs. The distinction in meaning between *hic, ille, iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

5. Determinative Pronouns.   (See § 79.)

§ 370. **Is** refers to some person or thing determined by the context : as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Săcerdōte praetōre. *Is* quum hăbēret ūnĭcam fīliam, eam bŏnis suis hērēdem instĭtuit, *P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.*—Cic.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of **is** are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause : as,

Frātrem tuum in cēteris rēbus laudo : in hāc ūnā reprehendĕre cōgor, *In other respects I commend your brother : in this alone I am compelled to censure* (*him*).

Non obsistam frātris tui vŏluntāti ; făvēre non pŏtĕro, *I will not stand in the way of your brother's desire : further* (*it*) *I cannot.*

Obs. Sometimes the Accusative of *is* is omitted, even when it refers to a different case : as,

Libri, de quibus scrībis, mei non sunt ; sumpsi a fratre meo, *The books about which you write are not mine ; I borrowed* (them) *from my brother.*

§ 375. **Idem** may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned : as,

Nihil ūtĭle, quod non *ĭdem* hŏnestum, (*There is*) *nothing expedient which is not also honourable.*—Cic.

Inventi multi sunt, qui vītam prŏfundĕre pro patriā părāti essent, īidem glōriae jactŭram ne mĭnĭmam quidem făcĕre vellent, *There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory* (*on her behalf*).—Cic.

§ 376. **Ipse** gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very, just,* or *exactly* : as,

Quaeram ex *ipsā*, *I will enquire of the woman herself.*—Cic.

Accĭpio quod dant; mĭhi ĕnim sătis est, *ipsis* non sătis, *I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.*—Cic.

Ibi mĭhi Tulliŏla mea fuit praesto, nătáli suo ipso die, *There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday.*—Cic.

Crassus triennio *ipso* mĭnor erat quam Antōnius, *Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.*—Cic.

§ 377. **Ipse,** when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus "me ipse laudo," *I (but not another person) praise myself;* but "me ipsum laudo," *I praise myself (but not another person):* as,

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcīnā [i. e. ut *alii* me consolentur]; me *ipse* consōlor, *I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic.

Cato se *ipse* intĕrēmit, *Cato slew himself* [i.e. *others did not slay him*].

Frātrem suum dein *seipsum* interfēcit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac.

6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

RELATIVES.	CORRELATIVES.
qui	is, ĭdem
quālis	tālis
quantus	tantus
quot (indecl.)	tot (indecl.)

ADVERBS.	
ut	ĭta
quālĭter	tālĭter (rare)
quantŏpĕre	tantŏpĕre
quŏties (-ens)	tŏties (-ens)

Bestiae in *quo* lŏco nātae sunt ex *eo* se non commŏvent, *Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.*—Cic.

Eădem ūtĭlĭtātis *quae* hŏnestātis est rēgŭla, *The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.*—Cic.

Quāles .... princĭpes, *tāles* .... cīves, *Like rulers, like people.*—Cic.

Tantas ŏpes *quantas* nunc hăbet, non hăbēret, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.*—Cic.

*Quŏties*cunque dīco, *tŏties* mihi vĭdeor in jūdĭcium vĕnīre, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. After *talis, tantus, tot* and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives *qualis, quantus,* etc., are often left to be understood · as,

Quaeso tam angustam talis vir (*sc.* qualis tu es) ponis dŏmum, *Prythee, being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?*—Phaedr.

s, *I accept*
—Cic.

ere met me

as younger

, agrees
her one
aŭdo," *I*
laudo,"

consōlor,

slay him].
and after-

§ 80.)

Relative

e prin-
elatives
verbs:

Beasts do

diency is

le.—Cic.
not be in

often as

Relatives

, *Prythee,*
Phaedr.

Conservāre urbes *tantas* atque *tales* (sc. *quales* eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable* (as those).—Cic.

Obs. 2. It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *idem :* but these pronouns are to be used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic, ille,* or *iste.* When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor quī dīcĭtur Jŏvis, *Yonder splendour which is called* (*that of*) *Jupiter.*—Cic.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause : as,

Thĕmistŏcles noctu de servis suis [eum] *quem hăbuit fĭdēlissimum,* ad Xerxem mīsit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives **quālis, quantus,** are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause : as,

Tālis es *quālem* te semper pŭtāvi, *You are the like of what I have always thought you.*

Tanti erant lăbōres *quantos* nunquam spēraverant, *Their hardships were greater than they had ever anticipated.*

Obs. Talis, tan*cus* are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut.*

7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. **Alĭquis** is more emphatic than **quis.** Hence *ălĭquis* stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *quum, si, nisi, ne* and *num :* as,

Illis prōmissis standum non est, *quae* coactus *quis* mĕtu prōmīsĕrit, *One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

Divitiăcus Caesărem obsecrāvit, *ne quid* grăvius in frātrem stătuĕret, *Divitiacus besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. **Quispiam** is used like *ălĭquis,* but with less emphasis : as,

Forsĭtan ălĭquis ălĭquando ējusmŏdi quidpiam fēcĕrit, *Perhaps some one may have at some time done something of the like.*—Cic.

§ 385. **Quĭdam,** *a certain one,* denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary or desirable : as,

Quĭdam ex advŏcātis intellĭgĕre ɪe dixit, non id ăgi, ut vērum invĕ-

nīrētur, *One of the assistant counsel said he could see the object aimed at was not the discovery of truth.*—Cic.

Hăbĭtant hic quaedam mŭlĭercŭlae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

§ 386. The substantive **quisquam** and the adjective **ullus**, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions, and in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sĭne* : as,

Justĭtia *nunquam* nŏcet *cuiquam*, qui eam hăbet, *Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

Sine sŏciis nēmo quidquam tāle cōnātur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

Sine virtūte nĕque ămīcĭtiam *neque ullam* rem expĕtendam consĕqui possŭmus, *Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

Quid est, quod *quisquam* dignum Pompēio afferre possit ? *What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey ?*—Cic.

§ 388. **Quisque** denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), and in principal sentences is always placed after *se* and *suus* : as,

Sĭbi quisque maxĭmē consŭlit, *Everybody consults his own interests above all.*—Cic.

Suae quemque fortūnae maximē poenĭtet, *Everybody has most fault to find with his own fortune.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic, and consequently precedes *se* and *suus* : as,
>
> Qu'm *quisque* nōrit artem, in hac se exerceat, *Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. **Quisque** is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. **Alius**, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another ;* **alter**, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things) : as,

Prōfĕrēbant alii purpŭram, tus alii, gemmas alii, *They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

Alter exercĭtum perdĭdit, alter vendĭdit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

————

CHAPTER XLIII.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

A. To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.

B. To ask a question; or, Interrogatively.

Obs. On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

A. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

Dextrā laevāque duo māria *claudunt* (nos), *On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

Vŏluptas sensĭbus nostris *blanditur*, *Pleasure wins upon our senses.*—Cic.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present*: as,

Dum haec in his lŏcis *gĕruntur*, Cassivellaunus nuntios *mittit*, *While these events are going on in these parts, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

Anus subtēmen *nēbat*: praetĕrea ūna ancillŭla *ĕrat*; ea *texēbat*, *An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl* (herself) *was weaving.*—Ter.

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

Archÿtas nullam căpĭtāliŏrem pestem quam vŏluptātem corpŏris *dicēbat* ā nātūrā dătam, *Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by the gods than bodily pleasure.*—Cic.

Ut Rōmae consŭles, sic Carthāgĭne quŏtannis annui bīni rēges *creābantur*, *As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.*—Nep.

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

Cras ingens *ĭtĕrābĭmus* aequor, *To-morrow we shall again be traversing the boundless ocean.*—Hor.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense.*—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *feci* is either *I have done* or *I did.* The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used : as,

> Nēmo părum diu *vixit* qui virtūtis *perfunctus est mūnĕre, No one has lived* (Pres.-Perf.) *too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.*—Cic.

> Appius caecus multos annos *fuit* (Past.-Indef.), *Appius was blind for many years.*—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after **postquam**, *after that ;* **ut prīmum, sĭmul atque (ac)**, *as soon as ;* **ut, ubi,** *when ;* where in English we often use the Past-Perfect : as,

> Pelŏpĭdas non dŭbĭtāvit, *sĭmŭl ac conspexit* hostem, conflīgĕre, *Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw* (had seen) *the enemy, to engage.*—Nep.

> *Ubi* de Caesăris adventu Helvētii certiōres *facti sunt*, lēgātos ad eum mittunt, *No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes.

> *Ut* Hostius *cĕcĭdit*, confestim Rōmāna inclīnātur ăcies, *As soon as Hostius fell* (had fallen), *the Roman line immediately gave way.*—Liv.

> *Obs.* 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified : as, Hannĭbal *anno tertio postquam* dŏmo *profūgĕrat*, in Afrĭcam vēnit, *Hannĭbal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* 2. But **quum,** *when,* usually takes the Subjunctive : v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense.*—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of : as,

> Prōgĕniem Trōjāno a sanguĭne dūci *audiĕrat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.*—Virg.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense.*—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have* taken place by the time spoken of : as,

> Rōmam quum *vēnĕro*, quae *perspexĕro*, scrībam ad te, *When I* (shall) *have got to Rome, I will write to you what I* (shall) *have seen.*—Cic.

> Dum tu haec lĕges, ego illum fortasse *convēnĕro, While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.*—Cic.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed : as,

> Hoc, dum *ĕrĭmus* in terris, ĕrit caelesti vītae sĭmĭle, *This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.*—Cic.

> Nātūram si *sĕquĕmur* dŭcem, nunquam aberrābĭmus, *If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic.

De Carthāgĭne vĕrēri non ante dēsĭnam, quam illam excīsam esse cognōvĕro, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* But the future sense is sure to be expressed in *one* of the clauses, as in the above examples.

B. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED INTERROGATIVELY.

1. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions :* as,

Quousque tandem, Cătĭlīna, *ăbūtēre* pătientiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut *vălet?* ut *mĕmĭnit* nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quŏta hōra *est? What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax *est* Gallīna Sўro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question :—nĕ (enclitic), num; utrum and an. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions ;* i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle* -nĕ.—The Particle nĕ is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question : as,

Tarquinius rex ĭnterrŏgāvit : Estisne vos lēgāti ōrātōresque missi a pŏpŭlo Collātīno? Sŭmus—*King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.*—Liv.

Dăturne illa hŏdie Pamphĭlo nuptum, *Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—Ter.

> *Obs. Ne* is always joined to the *first* word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with non, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne.*—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, nonne: as,

Cănis *nonne* sĭmĭlis lŭpo (est), *Is not the dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

Nonne ēmŏri per virtūtem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle* num.—The Particle num indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence : as,

Num nĕgare audes, *Do you dare deny it?*—Cic.

Num facti Pamphĭlum pĭget, *Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?*—Ter.

Num Viscellinum ămīci regnum appĕtentem debuĕrunt adjŭvāre, *Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?*—Cic.

2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are utrum, an, -nĕ. Utrum is used only in the first alternative, and an only in the second, while -nĕ is used in both: as,

Utrum ea vestra *an* nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?*—Cic.

Isne est quem quaero *annon*, *Is that the man I am seeking, or not?*—Ter.

Sunt haec tua verba *necne*, *Are these your words or no?*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Necne* and *annon*, "*or no*," are written as single words.

Obs. 2. *Ne* is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative is stated in the form "*or no*," necne.

Obs. 3. The first particle (*utrum*) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. **An** is sometimes *apparently* used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

Quid ais? *An* Pamphilus vēnit? *What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?*—Ter.

Quid dīcis? *An* bello fŭgĭtīvōrum Sĭcĭliam virtūte tuā lībĕrātam? *What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?*—Cic.

Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "*Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c.*"

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second,	Third, etc.
utrum,	an,	an
-nĕ,	an,	an
(omitted)	an,	an
(omitted)	-ne	

Obs. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 434.

what he has

t adjŭvāre,
a in aiming

ect ques-
the first
s used in

or ours?—

or not?—

Cic.

ve is stated

f the above

le ques-
ernative

is Pam-

běrātam?
from the

n the first
&c."

of the
re than

CHAPTER XLIV.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 417. *Present Tense.*—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

Dissolve frīgus, ligna sŭper fŏco large rĕpōnens, *Thaw away the cold; piling the logs freely upon the fire.*—Hor.

Fessae *dăte* serta cărīnae, *Crown with chaplets my tired bark.*—Ov.

Carpe diem, *Seize the (present) day.*—Hor.

Salve! Ave! *Hail to thee, farewell!*—Cic.

Obs. *Not* in prohibitions is expressed by *ne* (never non) · and in double sentences by *ne . . . . nēve* (neu); *nēve . . . . nēve*.

§ 418. *Future Tense.*—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as the present; hence it is always employed in laws: as,

Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe ne *sĕpĕlito*, nēve *ūrĭto*, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city.*—XII. Tables.

Rēgio impĕrio duo *sunto*, *Let there be two persons with regal power.*—Cic.

Non sătis est pulchra esse poēmăta, dulcia *sunto*, *It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must be sweet.*—Hor.

Hunc tu, Rōmāne, *căvēto*, *Against such an one, man of Rome, thou wilt have to be on thy guard.*—Hor.

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used·(*not* in laws) instead of the Imperative, especially in the Third Person: as,

Aut bĭbat aut ăbeat, *Let him either drink or begone.*—Cic.

Stătus, incessus, vultus, ŏcŭli, tĕneant dĕcōrum, *Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety.*—Cic.

Injūrias fortūnae, quas ferre nĕqueas, dēfŭgiendo rĕlinquas, *The injuries of fortune which you cannot bear, escape by flying from.*—Cic.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by *ne* (also *nēmo, nĭhil*) with the Subjunctive: generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense: as,

Ne quid rĕi tibi sit cum Săguntīnis, *Meddle not with the Saguntines.*—Cic.

Ne translĕris Ibērum, *Cross not the Ebro.*—Liv.

Nĭhil ignōvĕris, *Show no charity for anything!*—Cic.

CHAPTER XLV.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a *fact* like the Indicative, but merely as a *conception* of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). An hypothesis.

(B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).

(C). A wish.

(D). Purpose or result.

(E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*narratio obliqua*).

(A). *Si ita esset, ignoscĕrem, If it were so, I would excuse it.*—Cic.

(B). Cur *dubĭtas* quid de rēpublicā *sentias? Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?*—Cic.

Non *dŭbĭtat* quin Trōja brĕvi *perĭtūra sit, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.*—Cic.

(C). *Văleas* et mĕmĭnĕris nostri, *May you be prosperous and think of me!*—Cic.

(D). Lēgibus servīmus *ut* lībĕri esse *possimus, We submit to the laws that* (Purpose) *we may be able to be free.*—Cic.

Accĭdit *ut* ūnā nocte omnes Hermae *dejĭcĕrentur, It happened that* (Result) *in one night all the Hermae were demolished.*—Nep.

(E). *Dŏcent* quanto in discrīmĭne *sit* Nōlāna res, *They point out in what peril Nola is.*—Liv.

§ 422. The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

(1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425); or,

(2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*subjungo*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive ("objective") assertion.

Obs. The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood.

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses.*—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

Present and Future Time.

PRESENT.	Scio quid ăgas,	*I know what you are doing.*
	Scio quid ēgĕris,	*I know what you have done.*
	Scio quid actūrus sis,	*I know what you are going to do.*
PRESENT PERFECT.	Cognōvi quid ăgas,	*I have learnt what you are doing.*
	Cognōvi quid ēgĕris,	*I have learnt what you have done.*
	Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,	*I have learnt what you are going to do.*
FUTURE.	Audiam quid ăgas,	*I shall hear what you are doing.*
	Audiam quid ēgĕris,	*I shall hear what you have done.*
	Audiam quid actūrus sis,	*I shall hear what you are going to do.*

Past Time.

PAST IMPERF.	Sciēbam quid ăgĕres,	*I knew what you were doing.*
	Sciēbam quid ēgisses,	*I knew what you had done.*
	Sciēbam quid actūrus esses,	*I knew what you were going to do.*
PAST INDEFINT.	Cognōvi quid ăgĕres,*	*I learnt what you were doing.*
	Cognōvi quid ēgisses,	*I learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvi quid actūrus esses,	*I learnt what you were going to do.*
PAST PERFECT.	Cognōvĕram quid ăgĕres,	*I had learnt what you were doing.*
	Cognōvĕram quid ēgisses,	*I had learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvĕram quid actūrus esses,	*I had learnt what you were going to do.*

* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement : as,

Aemĭlius Paullus tantum in aerārium pĕcūniae *invexit*, ut unīus impĕrātoris praeda fīnem *attŭlĕrit* trĭbūtorum, *Aemĭlius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money into the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* The *Historical Present* (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive : as,
>
> Helvĕtii ·lēgātos ad Caesărem *mittunt*, qui *dīcĕrent, The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.*—Caes.

1. Hypothetical Sentences.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protăsis* and the *Apodŏsis:* the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.* — If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood : as,

Si est bŏni consŭlis ferre ŏpem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium.

etc., *If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.*—Cic.

Si *tŏnuit*, etiam *fulsit*, *If it thundered, it also lightened.*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive : as,

Si *nĕgem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.*—Cic.

Tu si hic *sis*, *ălīter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.*—Ter.

Nĕcassem jam te verbĕrĭbus, nisi īrātus *essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.*—Cic.

426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen* or *may have happened* in Present or Future Time : as,

Me dies, vox, lătĕra, dēfĭciant, *si* hoc nunc vōcĭfĕrāri *vĕlim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now,* etc.—Cic.

Si *scĭĕris (Perfect)* aspĭdem occulte lătĕre uspiam,...... imprŏbe *fecĕris,* nisi *monueris* altĕrum ne assīdeat, *If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* In such cases we in English often use a *Past* Tense Subjunctive, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were,* &c., as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not* actually taking place, whether *now* (Past-Imperfect), or in the *Past* (Past-Perfect): as,

Săpientia non *expĕtĕrĕtur si* nihil *effĭcĕret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.*—Cic.

(Si, úno praelio *victus (esset)* Alexander, bello *victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.*—Liv.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument *(Subjunctivus Concessivus)* : as,

Mălus cīvis Cn. Carbo fuit :—*fuerit* aliis ; tibi quando esse coepit, *Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that* he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?*—Cic.

Vērum, ut ita *sit,* tamen non pŏtes hoc praedĭcāre, *Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.*—Cic.

2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used *after* words denoting doubt or uncertainty: as,

Quum *incertus* essem ubi *esses*, *As I was uncertain where you were.—* Cic.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Quālis *sit* ănĭmus ipse ănĭmus *nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.*—Cic.

(Here the *Direct* Question would be, Qualis *est* animus? § 408.)

Diogĕnes *dispŭtare* sŏlēbat, quanto rēgem Persarum vitā fortūnāque sŭpĕrāret, *Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.*—Cic.

(Direct Question: Quanto regem Persarum supero? *How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

Dii utrum *sint*, necne *sint*, quaerĭtur, *The question is raised whether 'here are gods or no?*—Cic.

(Direct Question: Utram dii *sunt*, necne *sunt?*)

Multae gentes *nondum sciunt*, cur lūna dēfĭciat, *Many nations are ill in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.*—Cic.

(Direct Question: Cur luna *deficit?*)

Obs. Thus, quae tu *scias* scio, is *I know what it is you know:* but quae tu *scis*, scio, *What you know, I know also.*

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, num (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

Quaero .... *num*, ălĭter ac nunc ēvĕniunt, *ēvĕnīrent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?*—Cic.

Exsistit hoc lŏco quaedam *quaestio* subdiffĭcĭlis, *num* quando ămīci nŏvi vĕtĕrĭbus *sint* antĕpōnendi, *A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?*—Cic.

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quaerĭtur,   utrum .... an .... an.
           -ně   .... ăn .... ăn.
     (omitted) .... -ně .... -ně.
        num .... an .... an.

§ 438. The particle an is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after haud scio, nescio, dŭbĭto, dŭbium est, incertum est: as

Aristotĕlem, excepto Plātōne, *haud scio an* recte *dixĕrim* princĭpem phĭlŏsŏphōrum, *With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.*—Cic.

Dŭbĭto an Vĕnūsiam *tendam,* et ibi *exspectem* de lĕgiōnĭbus, *I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.*—Cic.

Contĭgit tibi quod *haud scio an* nĕmĭni, *The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an,* always imply the *probability* of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "*I don't know whether.*"

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating *perplexity,* where the Verb *dŭbĭto* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*) : as,

Quid hoc hŏmĭne *fŭciātis, What are ye to do with this man?*—Cic.
Quid ăliud *făcĕret, What else was he to do?*—Cic.
Quid *ēnŭmĕrem* artium multĭtūdĭnem, *Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?*—Cic. (Quid *enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optativus.*—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a *wish.*

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable : as,

Intĕream si văleo stare, *May I be a dead man, if I can stand bail!*—Hor.

Văleant cīves mei, *sint* beati, *May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic.

Especially with **utĭnam,** *O that !* as,

Utĭnam mŏdo cōnāta perfĭcĕre *possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!*—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express *mutual encouragement :* as,

Dum vīvĭmus *vīvāmus, While we live let us live !*
Imĭtēmur nostros mājōres, *Let us imitate our ancestors !*—Cic.

> *Obs.* In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. **mĕmĭnerim** : as,
> **Mĕmĭnĕrĭmus,** *Let us remember !*

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable : as,

Utĭnam prōmissa *lĭcĕret* non dăre, *Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises !*—Cic.

Utĭnam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Caesăre sŏcietātem nunquam *coisses* aut nunquam *dīrēmisses, I would, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar, or else had never broken it off.*—Cic.

§ 447
followed

(1.)
Subjunc

Optāvi
might be t

(2.) **v**
and the

Mālo t
rather a t
praise you.

Nōlo ac
accuser bri

4.

§ 449.
junctions
in order t
pose and

§ 450.
used with
Result : a

Rōmāni
Romans fetc

Pylădes
himself to be
Cic.

> *Obs.* Un
> *ing, pe*

Tarquini
Tarquinius u
garded as hi

Tempĕra
pūreant, Ten
to right reas

Saepe fĭt
occurs that th
—Cic.

Si haec n
sition is not t

ƏM. L. G.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut* :

(1.) **Opto**, *I wish*, is generally construed with ut and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive) : as,

Optāvit ut in currum patris *tollĕrētur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) **Vŏlo, Nōlo,** and **Mālo,** are frequently found with ut and the Subjunctive; also very often with ut omitted : as,

Mālo te *săpiens hostis mĕtuat,* quam stulti cives *laudent, I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Cic.

Nōlo accūsātor in jūdĭcium pŏtentiam *affĕrat, I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.*—Cic.

4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, **ŭt (ŭti)**, **quō**, *that, in order that ;* **nē** (or **ŭt nē**), *lest, in order that . . . not ;* **quĭn, quōmĭnus,** *that not,* to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction ut, *that, in order that, so that,* is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either *Purpose* or *Result* : as,

(a.) *Purpose.*

Rōmāni ab arātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, *ut* dictātor esset, *The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.

Pylădes Orestem se esse dixit, *ut* pro eo *nĕcārētur, Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of command-ing, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).

(b.) *Result.*

Tarquinius sic Servium dīlĭgēbat, *ut* is ejus vulgo *hăbērētur* fīlius, *Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently re-garded as his son.*—Cic.

Tempĕrantia sēdat appĕtītiōnes et effĭcit *ut* hae rectae rătiōni *pāreant, Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

Saepe fit *ut*, ii qui dēbeant, non *respondeant* ad tempus, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

Si haec nuntiatio vēra non est, *sĕquĭtur ut* falsa *sit, If this propo-sition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

Thrasybŭlo contĭgit *ut patriam lĭbĕrāret, It fell to the lot of Thrasybulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

> *Obs.* The phrases, sequitur, *it follows;* restat, *it remains;* necesse est, *it is necessary;* aequum, justum est, *it is right* or *just;* and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. Ut and ne are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying *to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour;* ut in a positive, ne in a negative sense: as,

Cīvĭtāti *persuāsit ut de finĭbus suis exīrent, He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

Te *hortor ut* hos libros de phĭlŏsŏphiā stŭdĭōse *lĕgas, I urge you to read these books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

Prĕcor nĕ me dĕsĕras, *I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a purpose.
>
> *Obs.* 2. Jŭbeo, *I order;* vĕto, *I forbid;* cōnor, *I attempt;* and, sometimes, nītor, *I strive,* take the Infinitive: as,
>
>> Jŭbet nos Pythius Apollo noscĕre nosmet ipsos, *The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.
>>
>> Lex pĕregrīnum vĕtat in mūrum ascendĕre, *The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.
>>
>> Ter *sunt cōnati impōnĕre* Pĕlio Ossam, *Thrice they essayed to pile Ossa on Pelion.*—Virg.
>>
>> Jugurtha Cirtam *irrumpĕre nītĭtur, Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.
>
> *Obs.* 3. Impĕro is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,
> Ipsos abdūci impĕrābat, *He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 453. Quo. — The Conjunction quo, *in order that; that thereby,* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose:* as,

Corrūpisse dīcĭtur Cluentius jūdĭcium pĕcūniā, *quo* inĭmīcum suum innŏcentem *condemnāret, Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause: as,

Lēgem brĕvem esse ŏportet, *quo* făcĭlius ab impĕrītis *tĕneātur, A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Cic.

(Here **quo** = **ut eo**.)

> *Obs.* 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a *result.*
> *Obs.* 2. Concerning non quo, *not that,* see § 487. *Obs.* 1.

§ 454. Nĕ is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose,* ut being omitted; it is equivalent to ut non, quo non. *in order that . . . not; lest:* as,

Nōlo esse laudātor, *nĕ vĭdear ădŭlātor, I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her.

Gallīnae ăvesque rĕlĭquae pennis fŏvent pullos, *ne frīgŏre laedantur, Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic.

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

nĕ quis	instead of	ut nĕmo,	*that no one.*
nĕ ullus	" "	ut nullus,	*that none.*
nĕ unquam	" "	ut nunquam,	*that never.*
nĕ usquam	" "	ut nusquam,	*that nowhere.*
nēcŭbi (*i. e.* ne alicubi)		"	
nēcunde (*i. e.* ne alicunde),			*that from no quarter.*
nēquando (*i. e.* ne aliquando),			*that at no time.*

Caesărem complexus obsecrāre coepit *ne quid* grăvius in fratrem *stătuĕret, Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Caes.

Circumspectans *necunde* impĕtus in frŭmentātōres *fĭĕret, Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, etc., must be used: as,

Ex hoc effĭcĭtur.... *ut vŏluptas non sit summum bonum, From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.*—Cic.

Demosthĕnes perfēcit mĕdĭtando, *ut nēmo* plānius eo lŏcūtus pŭtarētur, *By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.*—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety* ne expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; ut, that it will *not* occur: as,

Tĭmēbam *ne* ēvĕnīrent ea quae accĭdērunt, *I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

Tĭmor Rōmae grandis *fuit, ne* ĭtĕrum Galli Rōmam rĕdīrent, *There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pater *terruit* gentes grăve *ne* rĕdīret sēcŭlum Pyrrhae, *The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

Omnes lăbōres te excĭpĕre vĭdeo; *timeo ut* sustĭneas, *I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non;* especially in negative sentences: as,

Tĭmeo *ne non* impetrem, *I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

Non vĕreor *ne* tua virtus ŏpĭniōni hŏmĭnum *non* respondeat, *I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. **Quīn**, *that not*, *so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative sentences* only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: as, Non prŏhĭbeo, *I do not prevent*; Non rĕtĭneo, *I do not restrain*; Non rĕpugno, *I do not object*; and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as Non est dŭbium, *There is no doubt*; Quis dŭbĭtat, *Who doubts?* Fieri non potest, *It cannot be*; Nĕgāri non pŏtest, *It cannot be denied*; and the like.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens *without* something else happening.

Obs. Under *negative* sentences are included those virtually so; as when *quis* expects the answer *No*: also those containing such words as vix, *scarcely*; părum, (*too*) *little*, &c.

(1.) *Non* possŭmus, *quin* ălii *a* nōbis *dissentiant*, *rĕcūsāre, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.*—Cic

Vix me *contĭneo quin* in illum *invŏlem, I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.*—Ter.

Haud multum *abfuit quin* Ismēnias *interfĭcĕrētur, A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.*—Liv.

Obs. The expressions *haud multum abfuit*, *mĭnĭmum abfuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat* dŭbium *quin* Helvētii plūrĭmum *possent, There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.*—Caes.

Haud dŭbia res vīsa ...... *quin circumdūcĕret* agmen, *There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.*—Liv.

Obs. In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

Quis ignōrat quin tria Graecōrum gĕnĕra *sint, Who knows not* (i. e., *there is no one who knows not*) *that there are three classes of Greeks?*—Cic.: where we might equally well have had, Quis ignōrat tria .... *esse* (§ 507).

(3.) Equĭdem *nunquam* dŏmum mīsi ūnam ĕpistŏlam, *quin esset* ad te altĕra, *In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.*—Cic.

Nullus fĕre dies est quin Satrius meam dŏmum *ventĭtet, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.*—Cic.

§ 462. **Quin** is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (quî ne); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

Quin Igĭtur expergiscĭmĭni? *Why not then be up and doing?*—Sall
Quin conscendĭmus ĕquos? *Why not to horse at once?*—Liv.

Obs. Quin with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,
Quin tu hoc audi, *Nay but do you hear me.*—Ter.

§ 463. **Quōmĭnus**, *that not*, *so that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance*; as, impĕdio, *I impede*; prŏhĭbeo, *I prevent*; offĭcio, *I obstruct*, etc.; also after per me stat, fit, *it is owing to me* (that something does *not* take place): as,

Non rĕcūsābo quomĭnus omnes mea scripta lĕgant, *I will not object to all men's reading my writings.*—Cic.

Caesar cognōvit per Afrānium stāre quomĭnus dīmĭcārētur, *Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.*—Caes.

5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Oratio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem *se* ad dēlībĕrandum sumptūrum (esse), *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take a day to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: Diem *ego* ad dēlĭbĕrandum *sūmam*, *I will take a day to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

(A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.

(B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.

(C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.

(D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.

(E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as dixit, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, ... Aeduis se obsĭdes reddĭtūrum non esse, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caesărem lēgātos mittit, "*velle se de his rebus ăgĕre cum eo,*" *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua* : as,

Caesar lēgātos cum his mandātis mittit, .. haec esse *quae* ab eo *postūlāret*, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Caes.

(Direct form : Haec sunt quae a te *postŭlo.*)

Apud Hypănim flŭvium Aristŏtĕles ait, bestiŏlas quasdam nasci, *quae* unum diem *vīvant*, *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic.

(Direct form : Sunt bestiolae quaedam *quae* unum diem *vivunt.*)

> *Obs.* But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative : as,
>
> Quis pŏtest esse tam āversus a vēro, qui nĕget haec omnia, *quae vĭdemus*, deōrum immortālium pŏtestāte administrāri, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods ?*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) *Questions* transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434) : as,

Furĕre omnes trĭbūni plēbis .. "quidnam id rei *esset*?" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean ?"*—Liv.

(Direct question : Quidnam id rei *est*?)

Quid de praedā făciendum *cŏnsērent*, *What did they think should be done about the spoil ?*—Liv.

(Direct question : Quid de praedā faciendum *censetis*?)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

"Si vĕtĕris contŭ mĕliae oblīvisci vellet, num ĕtiam rĕcentium injūri-arum mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre *posse* ?" "*Even if he were willing (he said) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries ?*"—Caes.

(Here, *num* dēpōnĕre posse = *non* dēpōnĕre posse.)

Interrŏgābat .. "*quando ausūros* exposcĕre rĕmĕdia, nĭsi .. etc.*"* *He asked "When* would *they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc. ?*"—Tac.

(*Quando* ausuros = *nunquam* ausuros.)

An quicquam *esse* sŭperbius ? *Could anything be more arrogant ?*—Liv.

(*An quicquam* esse = *nihil* esse.)

§ 470.
to the *or*
some suc
as,

(Orārē)
assistance

" Sin I
Helvĕtiōru
against the
—Caes.

§ 471.
for the r
obliqua :

Caesar
multĭtūdĭn
that could b

(Direct
comp. § 48

" Intell
annos tectu
what the un
over their h

(Direct

6. U

§ 474.
junctive (
not simpl

§ 475.
lowed by
belongs c

Haec *qu*
should see th

(*Qui* vid
Nec qu
disciplīnam
not first lear

(*Qui non*
Obs. To
know.

§ 476.
stating th

O fortū
invĕnĕris, O f
a Homer to

§ 470. (D.) *Commands* and exhortations, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *imperāvit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451): as,

(Orāre) ..*ferrent* opem, *adjŭvārent*, (*He begged them*) *to come to his assistance and help.*—Liv.

" Sin bello persĕqui persĕvĕrāret, *rĕmĭniscĕrĕtur* pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum," " *If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them* (*he bad him*) *remember the original prowess of the Helvetii.*" —Caes.

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar respondit .. " nullos in Galliā văcāre agros, qui dări tantae multĭtūdĭni *possint*," *Caesar replied .. that " there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude.*"—Caes.

(Direct form: " Nulli in Galliā vacant agri, qui dari *possint :*" comp. § 480.)

" Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. *qui* inter quātuordĕcim annos tectum non *sŭbissent*, virtūte *possint*," " *He* (*Caesar*) *would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle.*"—Caes.

(Direct form also : " Qui subissent (§ 476) .. possint " (§ 434).

6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. **Qui** *hypothetical.*—The Relative **qui, quae, quod**, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

Haec *qui vĭdeat*, nonne *cōgătur* fătēri deos esse, *Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods ?*— Cic.

(*Qui* videat = *si* quis videat, *if any one were to see.*)

Nec quisquam rex Persārum pŏtest esse, *qui* non ante Magōrum disciplīnam *percēpĕrit, Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.*—Cic.

(*Qui non* perceperit = *nisi* percepĕrit, *unless he has learned.*)

Obs. To this head belongs the phrase quod sciam, *as far as I know, if only I know.*

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something : as,

O fortūnāte adŏlescens, *qui* tuae virtūtis Hŏmērum praecōnem *invĕnĕris, O fortunate youth, who hast found* (i. e. *in that thou hast found*) *a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess* —Cic.

Ut cŭbĭtum discessĭmus, me et de viā et *qui* ad multam noctem *vigilassem*, arctior quam sŏlēbat somnus complexus est, *No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.*—Cic.

(*Qui* vigilassem = *quum* vigilassem, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of qui as introducing a *reason* is augmented by ut, utpŏte, quippe: as,

Magna pars Fidēnātium, *ut qui* cŏlōni addĭti Rōmānis *essent*, Lătīne sciēbant, *A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.*—Liv.

Multa de meā sententiā questus est Caesar, *quippe qui* ab eo in me *esset incensus*, *Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).*—Cic.

> *Obs.* But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative : as,
>
> Anĭmus fortūnā non ĕget, *quippe quae* prŏbĭtātem . . . nĕque dăre nĕque ērĭpĕre *pŏtest*, *The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.*—Sall.

§ 478. Qui of *Purpose*.—Qui takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of ut, and denotes a *Purpose* (§ 449) : as,

Sunt multi qui ērĭpiunt ăliis quod ăliis *largiantur*, *There are many who take from one to bestow on another.*—Cic.

(*Quod* largiantur = *ut* largiantur.)

Clusīni lēgātos Romam *qui* auxĭlium a sĕnātu *pĕtĕrent*, mīsêre, *The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.*—Liv.

(*Qui* peterent = *ut* peterent.)

§ 479. Qui of *Result*.— Qui is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of ut as indicating a *Result* (§ 449) : as,

In ēnōdandis nōmĭnĭbus, *quod* mĭsĕrandum *sit*, lăbōrātis, *In explaining names you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.*—Cic.

(*Quod* miserandum sit = *ut* miserandum sit.)

Mājus gaudium fuit quam *quod* ūnĭversum hŏmĭnes *căpĕrent*, *The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.*—Liv.

(Major quam *quod* caperent = major quam *ut* caperent.)

§ 480. Qui is especially so used after the adjectives dĭŗnus, indignus, ĭdōneus, and the like, to denote what a person is *worthy of* or *fit for* : as,

Līviānae făbŭlae non sătis *dignae* sunt quae ĭtĕrum *lĕgantur*, *The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.*—Cic.

Nulla mihi vĭdēbātur *aptior* persōna quae de sĕnectūte *lŏquĕrētur*, quam Cătōnis, *No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.*—Cic.

Hŏmĭnes scĕlĕrāti *indigni* mihi vĭdēbantur, quōrum causam *ăgĕrem*, *The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.*—Cic.

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as **sunt qui**, *there are some who*; **non dēsunt qui**, *there are not wanting men who*; **rĕpĕriuntur**, *there are found some who*: as,

Sunt qui discessum ănĭmi a corpŏre *putent* esse mortem, *There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.*—Cic.

Fŭēre qui crēdĕrent M. Crassum non ignārum ejus consĭlii fuisse, *There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.* —Sall.

§ 483. **Quum**. — The Conjunction **quum** takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*); it may then generally be translated by *as*, *since*, or *although*: as,

Quum vīta sĭne ămīcis insĭdiārum et mĕtūs plēna *sit*, rătio ipsa mŏnet ămīcĭtias compărāre, *Since life without friends is full of treachery, and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.*—Cic.

Quum in commūnĭbus suggestĭbus consistĕre non *audēret*, contiōnāri ex turri altā sŏlēbat, *As he (Dionysius) dared not take his stand in the general platforms, he used to deliver his harangues from a high tower.* —Cic.

Phōcion fuit perpĕtuo pauper, *quum* dītissĭmus esse *posset*, *Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*— Nep.

§ 484. **Quum** also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

Socrătes in pompā *quum* magna vis auri argentique *ferrētur*, quam multa non dēsīdĕro ! inquit, *When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want!"*—Cic.

Quos *quum* tristiōres *vīdisset*, triginta mĭnas accēpit, nē aspernāri Rēgis lībĕrālĭtātem vīdērētur, *When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minae, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality.*—Cic.

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But **quum** is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time *at which* something takes place: as,

Pŭgĭles etiam *quum fĕriunt* adversārium, ingĕmiscunt, *Prize-fighters even when they are in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan.*— Cic.

Quum testes *dăbo* ex Sĭcĭliā, quem vŏlet ille ēlĭgat, *When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.*—Cic.

§ 486. **Quod** (quo) and **quia**.—The Conjunctions **quod** and **quia**, *because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Idcirco sum tardior *quod* non invĕnio fīdum tăbellārium, *I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.*—Cic.

Urbs quae *quia* postrēma aedĭfĭcāta est, Neapŏlis (νέα πόλις) nōmĭnātur, *A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (New-town).*—Cic.

Obs. Quia states a reason more directly and positively than *quod.*

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is *not* true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod, non quia,* is used.

The difference between the use of *quia* or *quod* with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example :—

Pūgĭles ĕtiam quum fĕriunt adversārium ingĕmiscunt, *non quod dŏleant* ănĭmove *succumbant,* sed *quia* profundendā vōce omne corpus intendĭtur, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan; not because they are in pain* (supposed, but *false* reason), *but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension* (real reason).—Cic.

§ 489. Quod is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section : as, jŭvat, *it delights ;* vĭtium est, *it is a fault ;* laudābĭle est, *it is praiseworthy,* and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

Jŭvat me, *quod* vĭgent stŭdia, *prŏfĕrunt* se ingĕnia hŏmĭnum, *It is a pleasure to me that intellec*··· *pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.*— Plin.

Magnum bĕnĕfĭcium nā··· ··· est, *quod* nĕcesse est mŏri, *It is a great boon of nature that we must au···*—Sen.

§ 492. **Quippe** (*quia-pe*), *because, as being,* is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, quum, quod, quia, quŏniam, ŭbi, ĕnim, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood accorⅾing as fact or hypothesis is indicated : as,

Ego vēro laudo : .. *quippe quia* magnārum saepe id rĕmĕdium aegrĭtūdĭnum est, *I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.*—Ter.

Lĕve nōmen hăbet utraque res : *quippe lĕve ĕnim* est hoc tōtum, rīsum mŏvēre, *Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.*—Cic.

§ 493. **Quippe** is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason :—

Quippe vĕtor fātis ! *Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!*—Virg.

Mŏvet me *quippe* lūmen cūriae ! *Forsooth that luminary of the senate-house disturbs me !*—Cic.

§ 494. **Quŏniam** (*quum jam*), *since*, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

Quŏniam res in id discrīmen adducta *est*, *Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.*—Cic.

De suis prīvātim rēbus ab eo pĕtĕre coepērunt, *quŏniam* cīvĭtāti consŭlĕre non possent, *They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.* —Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified *themselves* merely: v. § 487.)

Itaque *quŏniam* ipse pro se dīcĕre non *posset*, verba fēcit frāter ejus, *Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.*—Nep.

§ 497. **Dum**, *whilst*, is construed with the Indicative; dum, *until*, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea rĕdemptio mansit......*dum* jūdices *rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in force ...... until the judges were rejected.*—Cic.

Obsĭdio deinde per paucos dies mågis quam oppugnātio fuit *dum* vulnus dūcis cūrārĕtur, *The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile* (dum) *the general' wound might be cured.*—Liv.

Irātis subtrăhendi sunt ii, in quos impĕtum făcĕre cōnantur, *dum se ipsi collĭgant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.*—Cic.

§ 498. **Dummŏdo** (also simply dum or modo), *provided that* (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Ōdĕrint, *dum mĕtuant, Let them hate provided only they fear.*—Suet.

Omnia recta et hŏnesta neglĭgunt, *dummŏdo* pŏtentiam consĕquantur, *They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.*—Cic.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, **antĕquam**, **priusquam**, *before that*, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

In omnĭbus nĕgōtiis, priusquam *aggrĕdiāre*, adhĭbenda est praepărātio dilĭgens, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.*—Cic.

§ 501. When **antĕquam**, **priusquam**, and **postquam**, are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(a.) With Indicative.

Antĕquam ad sententiam rĕdeo, de me pauca *dicam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.*—Cic.
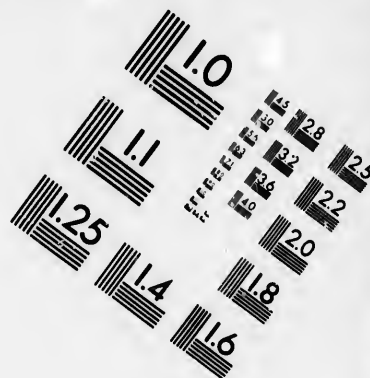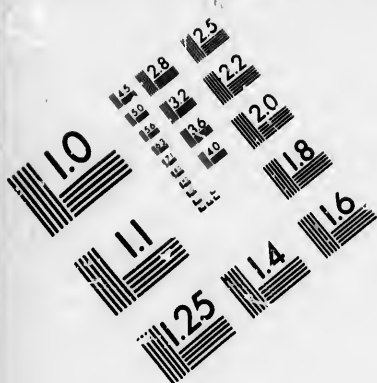
IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)
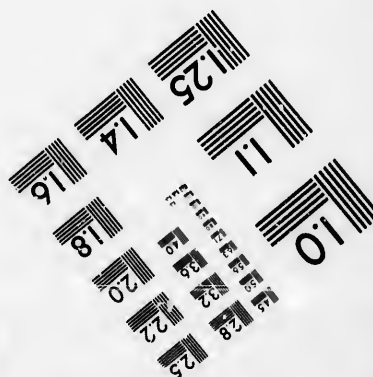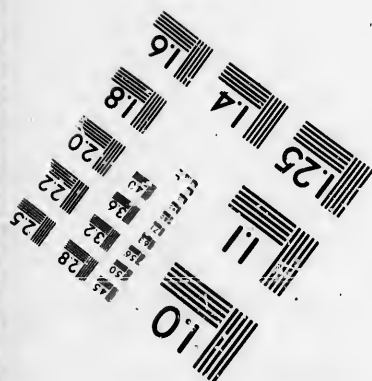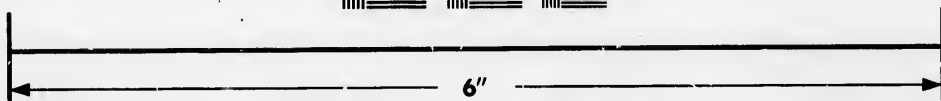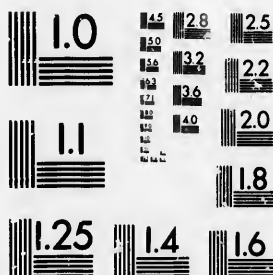
6"

Non *ante* fīnītum est proelium, quam trĭbūnus mīlĭtum *interfectus est, The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.*—Liv.

Ante ălĭquanto quam tu *nātus es, A good while before you were born.*—Cic.

Dēcessit *post* annum quartum quam expulsus ĕrat, *He died four years after he had been banished.*—Nep.

(b.) With Subjunctive.

Prius Placentiam pervēnēre quam sătis scīret Hannĭbal ab Ticino prŏfectos, *They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv.

Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Sălămīna, quae facta est *prius quam* poenā libĕrārētur, *He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep.

§ 502. **Quamvis,** *however much,* and **lĭcet,** *although,* used concessively, govern the Subjunctive : as,

Quamvis Elỹsios mĭrētur Graecia campos, *However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.*—Virg.

Quamvis sit magna (exspectātio), tămen eam vinces, *Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic.

Lĭcet ipsa vĭtium sit ambĭtio, frĕquenter tămen causa virtūtum est, *Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.*—Quint.

Vita brĕvis est *lĭcet* supra mille annos exeat, *Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen.

§ 503. **Quanquam, etsi, etiamsi,** *although,* take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421): as,

Quanquam,—etsi priōre foedĕre starētur,—sătis cautum ĕrat de Saguntīnis, *Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.*—Liv.

Quanquam festīnas, non est mŏra longa, *Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.*—Hor.

Sed *quanquam nĕgent,* nec virtūtes nec vĭtia crescĕre, attāmen, etc., *But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XLVI.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive.

1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as jŭvat, dēlectat, (*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as pulchrum, dĕcōrum est, (*it*) *is fine, becoming*, &c. : as,

Jūvat integros accēdĕre fontes, atque *haurīre*, *It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and drink.*—Lucr.

(Here *accēdĕre, haurīre*, form subjects to *jŭvat*.)

At pulchrum est dĭgĭto *monstrāri*, et *dicier*, "hic est," *But it is a fine thing to be pointed at with the finger, and for it to be said, "There he is!"* —Pers.

2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare, and chiefly confined to the poets : as,

Quid sit fūturum cras fūge *quaerĕre*, *What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.*—Hor.

Pro nobis mitte *prĕcāri*, *Give over praying for us!*—Ov.

3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *hearing,* are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce : as,

Thāles Mīlēsius *ăquam dixit esse* ĭnĭtium rērum, *Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.*—Cic.

Sentit ănĭmus *se mŏvēri, The soul is conscious that it moves.*—Cic.

Non ĕnim ambrŏsiā deos aut nectăre *laetāri arbitror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.*—Cic.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various *feelings* of the mind, as, *joy, grief, wonder,* etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

Salvum te advĕnīre gaudeo, *I rejoice that you come in safety.*—Plaut.

Infĕriōres non *dŏlēre* (dēbent) se a suis *sŭpĕrāri, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.*—Cic.

Miror te ad me nihil *scrībere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.*—Cic.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as certum est, *it is certain*; mănĭfestum est, *it is manifest*; aequum, justum est, *it is fair* or *just*; ŏpus, nĕcesse, est, *it is necessary*; sĕquĭtur, *it follows*; constat, *it is acknowledged*; expĕdit, *it is expedient*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

Certum est libĕr.s a părentibus *ămāri, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.*—Quint.

Quae libĕrum *scire aequum est ădŏlescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.*—Ter.

Constat ad sălūtem cīvium *inventas esse leges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.*—Cic.

Lēgem brĕvem *esse ŏportet,* quō făcĭlius ab impĕrītis tĕneātur, *A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* Restat, relĭquum est, *it remains;* proxĭmum est, *the next thing is,* and the like; as also sometimes, sĕquĭtur, *it follows;* expĕdit, *it is expedient;* mos (moris) est, *it is a custom,* are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive : as,
>
> *Proxĭmum est ut* dŏceam deōrum prōvĭdentiā mundum admĭnistrāri, *The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.*—Cic.
>
> *Si* haec ēnuntiātio vēra non est, *sĕquĭtur ut* falsa sit, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

§ 511. Verbs signifying *willingness,* or *permission* (including jubeo), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

Mājōres *corpŏra* jŭvĕnum *firmāri* lăbōre *vŏluĕrunt, Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.*—Cic.

Sĕnātui *plăcet, Crassum* Sȳriam *obtĭnēre, It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.*—Cic.

Verres *hŏmĭnem corrĭpi jussit, Verres ordered the man to be arrested.*—Cic. (comp. § 451).

Cŭpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire that I may be merciful.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. Verbs of *wishing* are in many cases followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, sqq.).
>
> *Obs.* 2. *Impĕro* is sometimes used like *jŭbeo* (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive : as,
>
> *Has* omnes actuārias *impĕrat fĭĕri, He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.*—Caes.

4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination, ability, lawfulness, duty,* or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive without an Accusative : as,

Stŭdeo ex te *audīre* quid sentias, *I desire to hear from you what you think.*—Cic.

Amīcĭtia, nisi inter bŏnos, *esse* non *pŏtest, Friendship can only exist between the good.*—Cic.

Optat ărāre căballus, *The nag would like to draw the plough.*—Hor. (cf. § 447).

Dīci beātus ante ŏbĭtum nēmo *dēbet, No one ought to be called happy before his decease.*—Ov.

Caesar bellum cum Germānis *gĕrĕre constĭtuit, Caesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.*—Caes.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

Ubi vŏles *păter esse*, ĭbi esto, *When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

Cŭpio in tantis reipublĭcae pĕrĭcŭlis, me non *dissclŭtum vĭdēri*, *I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic.

Lĭcuit esse ŏtiōso *Themistocli*, *Themistocles might have been inactive* —Cic.

> *Obs.* The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is Volui me consulem *esse*, not *fuisse:* see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying *to begin, continue,* or *leave off;* also *to be* or *become accustomed,* govern the Infinitive: as,

Incĭpe, parve puer, mātrem *cognoscĕre* rīsu, *Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!*— Virg.

Illud jam *mīrāri dēsĭno*, *That I am now ceasing to wonder at.*—Cic.

5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote *surprise*, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mēne *dēsistĕre* victam, (*To think that*) *I should give over as vanquished!*—Virg.

6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Intĕreā Manlius in Etrūriā plēbem *sollĭcĭtāre, Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

Suo quisque mĕtu pĕrīcŭla *mētiri, Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find fŏre ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Clāmābant hŏmĭnes, *fŏre ut* ipsi se dii immortāles *ulciscĕrentur, The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.*—Cic.

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

Spero *fŏre ut contingat* id nobis, *I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic.

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

Chapter XLVII.--Participles.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition* : as,

Dionȳsius, cultros *mětuens* tonsōris, candenti carbōne sibi ădūrēbat căpillum, *Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.*—Cic.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong : as,

Ipsa *suā* Dido concĭdit *ūsa mănu*, *Dido fell, by* (Lit., *using*) *her own hand.*—Ov.

Puer běne *sĭbi fidens. A youth trusting well to himself.*—Cic.

Obs. When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity for*, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future ;* and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity.* Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect.*

Obs. 1. Deponents are the on.y Verbs in Latin which form a Perfect Participle Active : as, ădeptus, *having acquired ;* ūsus, *having used,* &c. (See § 103.)

Obs. 2. The lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive : as,

Multi in *ěquis părandis* adhĭbent cūram, in *ămīcis ēlĭgendis* neglĭgentes sunt, *Many take pains in getting horses* (Lit. *horses being got*)*, but are careless in choosing friends.*—Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing as *going on* at the time spoken of : as,

Curio ad fŏcum *sědenti* magnum auri pondus Samnītes quum attŭlissent, rěpŭdiāti sunt, *When the Samnites brought Curius as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.*—Cic.

Scripta tua jam diu *exspectans* non audeo tămen flāgĭtāre, *While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Imperfect Participle, *quum* with the Past-Imperfect is often used : as,

Audivi *quum diceret, I heard him saying.*—Cic.

524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense :—

Audeo,	I dare,	ausus,	having dared.
Gaudeo,	I rejoice,	gāvīsus,	having rejoiced, rejoicing.
Sŏleo,	I am wont,	sŏlĭtus,	having been wont.
Fīdo (& comp.),	I trust,	fīsus,	having trusted.
Jŭro,	I swear,	jūrātus,	having sworn.
Coeno,	I dine,	coenātus,	having dined.
Prandeo,	I breakfast,	pransus,	having breakfasted.
Nūbo,	I am married,	nupta,	having married.
Ŏdi,	I hate,	ōsus	having hated, hating.

§ 525. Some Deponents use their Perfect Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense : the following are among the principal ones that do so :—

Adĭpiscor,	I attain to,	ădĕptus, having attained, or having been attained.
Cŏmĭtor,	I accompany,	cŏmĭtātus, &c.
Confĭteor,	I confess,	confessus, &c.
Mētior,	I measure,	mensus.
Expĕrior,	I try,	expertus.
Mĕdĭtor,	I practise,	mĕdĭtātus.
Testor,	I call to witness,	testātus.
Mŏdĕror,	I control,	mŏdĕrātus.
Pŏpŭlor,	I devastate,	pŏpŭlātus.
Partior,	I divide,	partĭtus.
Păciscor,	I bargain,	pactus.

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By quum with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

Cognĭto Caesăris *adventu*, Ariovistus lēgātos ad eum mittit, *Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes.

Dextrā Hercŭles *datā* ōmen se accĭpere ait, *Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.*—Liv.

(B.)

Epămīnondas *quum vĭcisset* Lăcĕdaemŏnios ăpud Mantinĕăm, atque ipse grăvi vulnĕre se exănĭmāri *vidēret*, quaesīvit, salvusne esse clĭpeus, *Epaminondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.*—Cic.

(For more examples see § 332.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle* Active is used to denote (1) simple *futurity* ; (2) *intention* or *purpose* : as,

Delli mŏrĭtūre, *O Dellius, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.

Perseus rĕdiit, belli cāsum de integro tentātūrus, *Perseus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

Obs. The Future Participle occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive : as,

Nam priusquam incĭpias, *consulto* ; et ubi consŭlŭĕris, mātūre *facto* ŏpus est, *For before you make a beginning, you want counsel ; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall.

Nihil *pensi* neque *mŏdĕrāti* hăbēre, *They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predications are united in a sentence : as,

Victa pietas jăcet, *Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.*—Ov.

Rursus in oblīquum *verso* perrumpit *arātro, Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.*—Virg.

Tyrtaeus carmĭna *compŏsĭta* exercĭtui rĕcĭtāvit, *Tyrtaeus composed songs and repeated them to the army.*—Justin.

CHAPTER XLVIII.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative : as, rĕgendi, *of ruling* ; rĕgendo, *to, for,* or *by ruling* ; ad rĕgendum, *for the purpose of ruling.*

Obs. Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives : as,

Gen.—Omnis *lŏquendi* (§ 263) ēlĕgantia expŏlītur scientiā lĭtĕrārum, *Every kind of elegance of speech is made more refined by an acquaintance with literature.*—Cic.

Dat.—Aqua nitrōsa ūtĭlis est *bĭbendo* (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking.*—Plin.

Acc.—Brĕve tempus aetātis sătis longum est *ad* bĕne hŏnestēque *vīvendum* (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.*—Cic.

Abl.—Orător *in dicendo* (§ 331) exercĭtātus, *An orator practised in speaking.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions: otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used: see § 506 sqq.

§ 533. The Gerund as a Verbal Substantive still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

Parsĭmōnia est scientia *vitandi sumptūs sŭpervăcuos*, aut ars *re fămĭliāri* mŏdĕrāte *ūtendi*, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense; or the art of using one's income with moderation.*—Sen.

Diŏgĕnes dīcēbat, artem se trădĕre *vēra* ac *falsa dijŭdĭcandi*, *Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.*—Cic.

§ 534. The *Gerundive Participle* signifies that a thing is *necessary* or *proper* to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. ·It has the following modes of construction :—

- (A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb **est**, **sunt**, etc., in agreement with a Substantive, to signify that something *ought to be done.*
- (B.) It is used (impersonally) in the *Neuter* Gender along with the Verb **est**, with the same force as in the former case.
- (C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.—NOTE. *The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb *governs an Accusative*, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive: as,

Dīligentia est *cŏlenda, We must practise diligence.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* Such a construction as poenas tĭmendum est, *we must fear punishment* (Lucr.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb *governs any other case* than the Accusative the Gerundive is used impersonally with **est** in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

Rĕsistendum sĕnectūti est, *We must resist old-age.*—Cic.

Corpŏri *subvĕniendum est, We must aid the body.*—Cic.

Utendum erit verbis iis, quĭbus jam consuētūdo nostra non ūtĭtur, *We shall have to use words which our present usage does not employ.*—Cic.

> *Obs.* 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs.   (See examples.)
>
> *Obs.* 2. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omĭtted.   (See examples.)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.

2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.

3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus

<p style="text-align:center">Ars pueros ēdŭcandi difficĭlis est</p>

becomes

<p style="text-align:center">Ars puerōrum ēdŭcandōrum difficĭlis est</p>

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus, a, um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with puerorum in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum*. For example:

Nihil Xenŏphonti tam rēgāle vĭdētur, quam stŭdium *agri cŏlendi*, *Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.*—Cic.

Rēgŭlus *rĕtĭnendi officii* causā crŭciātum sŭbiit vŏluntārium, *Regulus for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.*—Cic.

> Obs. The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a *neuter* Adjective: as,
>
> (Pars hŏnesti) in *trĭbuendo suum* cuique versātur, *A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.*—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a *Purpose* or *Result* (§ 299): as,

Vălĕrius consul cŏmĭtia *collēgae subrŏgando* hăbuit, *Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague.*—Liv.

Dĕcemvĭri *lēgĭbus scrĭbundis, Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.*—Liv.

CHAPTER XLIX.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in um and u are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in um is used only after Verbs signifying *motion*, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Făbius Pictor Delphos ad ōrācŭlum *missus est scītātum* quĭbus prŏ-

cĭbus deos possent plācāre, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

Cŭbĭtum īre (or, of several persons, cŭbĭtum discēdĕre), *To go to bed.*—Cic.

Themistocles......Argos hăbĭtātum concessit, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

§ 544. The Supine in u (which is properly an Ablative of *Manner*, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as jūcundus, *pleasant*; făcĭlis, *easy*; hŏnestus, *honourable*; crēdĭbĭlis, *credible*; mīrābĭlis, *wonderful*; and the like, with their contraries, to denote *in what respect* they are predicated of anything : as,

Quid est tam *jūcundum cognĭtu* atque *audītu*, quam săpientibus sententiis grăvĭbusque verbis ornāta ōrātio? *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?*—Cic.

Id *dictu* quam re *făcĭlius*, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing.*—Liv.

Něfas est *dictu*, *There were an impiety in so saying!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb pŭdet : as,
Pŭdet dictu, *I am ashamed as I say it !*—Agr. 32.

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood : as,
Mīrăbĭle dictu, *Marvellous to relate !*—Virg.

PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

> *Obs.* Prosody is a Greek word (προσῳδία), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

CHAPTER L.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The Quantity of a Syllable is either long ($-$), short ($\smile$), or doubtful ($\simeq$).

(A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long: as, āurum, *gold*, pōēna, *punishment*, cūī, *to whom*.

> EXCEPTION.—Prae in composition is usually short before a vowel: as, prăe-acutus, *sharpened at the end.*
>
> > *Obs.* 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long: as, oc-cīdo, *to kill*, from caedo, *to strike;* con-clūdo, *to shut up*, from claudo, *to shut.*
> >
> > *Obs.* 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened: as, pŏesis (ποίησις), platĕa (πλατεῖα) as well as platēa.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long: as, cōgo from cŏăgo, *to collect*, bōbus from bŏvĭbus, *to or by oxen*, jūnior from jŭvĕnior, *younger*, prūdens from prŏvĭdens, *possessed of foresight.*

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (x, z), or by j: as, mēnsa, *a table*, dūx, *a leader*, Amāzon, *an Amazon*, ējus, *of him.*

> *Obs.* In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word nŭx (*a nut*), root nŭc-, the vowel **u** is said to be long (by position): though strictly speaking, it is the *syllable* which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant s, the *vowel* retaining its quantity as in other cases; nŭc-i, nŭc-em, nŭc-es, etc.

§ 730.

EXCEPT
together.
> *Obs.* 1.
> breat
> *Obs.* 2.
> and
> fruit
> *Obs.* 3.
> with

Obs. 4.

EXCEPT
naturally s
or pātris,
Ātlas; *cl,*
> *Obs.* 1.
> and
> Prōgn
> *Obs.* 2.
> ācres
> *Obs.* 3.
> with
> *whetl*

§ 730.
short: as
intervene

EXCEPT

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6
7.
8.
9.
10.

EXCEPTION 1. Bĭjugus, *yoked two together*, quadrĭjugus, *yoked four together.*

> *Obs.* 1. *Qu* is a single consonant : hence, ăqua, *water.* *H* is a simple breathing : hence, ădhuc, *as yet.*

> *Obs.* 2. A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word, and another consonant begins the next word : as, in mare, *into the sea ;* fruitūr vita, *he enjoys life.*

> *Obs.* 3. But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel *usually* remains short : as,
>> In sollo Phoebus claris lucēntĕ smăragdis.—Ov.

> *Obs.* 4. But a short vowel rarely stands before sc, sm, sp, sq, and st.

EXCEPTION 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful : as, dŭplex or dūplex, *twofold,* pătris or pātris, *of a father.* It generally remains short before *tl*, as, Ātlas ; *cl*, as assĕcla ; and *fl*, as mellĭfluus, *flowing-with-honey.*

> *Obs.* 1. It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n* : as, Tĕemessa or Tĕcmessa, Prŏcne (or Prŏgne), cȳcnus (or cȳgnus), *a swan.*

> *Obs.* 2. A vowel *naturally long* remains long before a mute and a liquid : as, ācres from ācer, *sharp.*

> *Obs.* 3. In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position : as, ŏb-ruo, not ŏb-ruo, *to over-whelm,* sūb-latum, not sŭb-latum, *lifted up.*

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short : as, pĭus, *pious,* flĕo, *to weep,* pŭer, *a boy :* or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as trăho, vĕho.

EXCEPTIONS. The following vowels are long before another vowel ·

1. The **a** in the old Genitive of the First Declension : as, aquāï.

2. The **a** and **e** of proper names in -aius, -eius : as, Cāius, Pompēius (Cājus, Pompējus).

3. The **e** in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes : as, diēi : but rĕi and fidĕi except in archaic poets.

4. The **e** in the Interjection ēheu.

5. The **i** in the Genitive alīus (but always short in alterĭus). In the other Genitives in ius, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry : as, illĭus, ipsĭus, unĭus.

6 The **i** in fio when not followed by *r :* as, fīo, fīebam, fīam, but fĭerem, fĭeri.

7. The **i** in dīa (δῖα), *divine.*

8. The **i** in Diana is doubtful : Dĭana and Dīana.

9. The **o** in the Interjection ohe is doubtful : ōhe and ŏhe.

10. All vowels long in the original Greek words : as, āēr ('ἀήρ), Aenēas (Aἰνείας), Alexandrīa ('Aλεξάνδρεια) Brisēis (Βρισηῖς).

§ 731. *Radical Vowels.*—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, lēvis, *light*, lĕvis, *smooth*, lĕgo, *I pick, read*, lēgo, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, dūco, *I lead*, root dŭc (compare dux, dŭcis: ēdŭco, *I educate*); dīco, *I say*, root dĭc (compare index, -dĭcis, mălĕdĭcus, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are *short*: as, rēgĭfŭgium (name of a festival), rēgĭfĭcus, *kingly* (rex, fŭgo, făcio); ŏpĭfĕr, *aid-bringing* (ops, fĕro); lānĭger, *wool-bearing* (lāna, gĕro); magnĭlŏquus, *grandly speaking* (magnus, lŏquor), etc.

> *Obs.* In levāmentum, instrūmentum, lenīmentum, etc., *a, u, i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

gĕr-ēbam, gĕr-ens, lānĭ-gĕr, from gĕr-o.

rēg-ius, rēg-īna, rēg-ĭ-fŭgium, from rex, rēg-ĭs.

EXCEPTIONS:

cŭrūlis (sella),	*the curule chair,*	from	currus.
tēgŭla,	*a tile,*	"	tĕgo.
sēdes,	*a seat,*	"	sĕd-eo.
lūcerna,	*a lantern,*	"	lūc-eo.
sēcius,	*otherwise,*	"	sĕcus.
prōnŭba,	*match-maker,*	"	nūbo.
jūcundus,	*pleasant,*	"	jŭvo.
hūmānus,	*human,*	"	hŏmo.
sōpor,	*sleep,*	"	sōpio.
pējĕro and dējĕro,		compounds of	jūro.

with some others.

> *Obs.* 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, index, -dĭcis, an *informer;* praedĭco, *I affirm;* mălĕdĭcus, *evil-speaking* (all with ĭ *short*), compared with dīco, *I say,* addīco, *I assign to,* etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root dĭc, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of dīco, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

> *Obs.* 2. In cognĭtum, agnĭtum (from nōtum), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare căpio, accĭpio, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than ĭ.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

lăvo,	lāvi,	lōtum,	*to wash.*
vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*to see.*
mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*to move.*
jŭvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	*to assist.*

EXCEPTIONS. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, rŭi.

2.

3.

§ 736. short: as to touch; o

§ 737. T cul, *far off* prŏficiscor *distance,* pr *great-grand* doubtful in *spring,* prŏ prŏpello, *to* prōcedo, *to*

§ 738. D dĭsertus, *el*

§ 739. N *unable;* nĕ *abominable;* homo), *no*

§ 740. O *to shut up.*

§ 741. Sĭ

§ 742. R *concerns* (bu

§ 743. Ve

§ 744. M as, sī, tū, tē

EXCEPTION psĕ (reapsĕ), p *Sing. Fem.* an

2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short :

Bĭbi, dĕdi, fŭi, tŭli,
Stĕti, stĭti, fĭdi, scĭdi.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short :

Dătum, rătum, sătum, rŭtum,
Ĭtum, cĭtum, lĭtum, sĭtum (quĭtum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From sto comes stătum : from sisto comes stătum.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated Perfect is short : as pŏposci from posco, *to demand ;* tĕtĭgi from tango, *to touch ;* cĕcīdi from caedo, *to cut.*

§ 737. The prefix pro is *short* in prŏcella, *a storm,* prŏcul, *far off,* prŏfanus, *profane,* prŏfestus, *not kept as a holiday,* prŏficiscor, *to set out,* prŏfiteor, *to profess,* prŏfugio, *to flee to a distance,* prŏfundus, *deep,* prŏfundo, *to pour forth,* prŏnepos, *great-grandson,* prŏpitius, *propitious,* prŏtervus, *wanton :* it is doubtful in prōcuro, *to manage another's affairs,* prŏpago, *offspring,* prŏpago, *to propagate,* prŏpino, *to drink to another,* prŏpello, *to push forward :* it is long in all other words : as, prōcedo, *to go forward,* prōcurro, *to run forward,* &c.

§ 738. **Di** is short only in dĭrimo (disimo), *to separate,* and dĭsertus, *eloquent.*

§ 739. **Ne** is short only in nĕque, *neither ;* nĕqueo, *to be unable ;* nĕfas (and its derivatives), *unlawful ;* nĕfandus, *abominable ;* long in other words, as nēmo (ne-hemo or homo), *no one.*

§ 740. **O** for **ob** is short in ŏmitto, *to let go by,* and ŏperio, *to shut up.*

§ 741. **Si** is short in sĭquidem.

§ 742. **Re** is always short, except rēfert (= rem fert), *it concerns* (but rĕfert from rĕfero).

§ 743. **Ve** is long, except in vĕhemens (= vē-mens), *forcible.*

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a *vowel* are long : as, sī, tū, tē, mē, sē, nē, ē, dē.

EXCEPTIONS. The enclitics are short : as, quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, cĕ, tĕ (tutĕ) psĕ (reapsĕ), ptĕ (suoptĕ) : quă (usu. preceded by si, num, etc.) *Nom. Sing. Fem.* and *Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from quis.

(B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Final Vowels.

§ 745. **a** is *long*:

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension: as, mensā.

2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in as and es (excepting tes): as, Aeneā, Anchisā.

Obs. But those in *es* (excepting *tes*) more frequently make ē: see § 746, 2.

3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation: as, amā.

4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals: as, ā (ăb), contrā, suprā; anteā, frustrā; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(But see next paragraph: 4.)

a is *short*:

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension: as, mensă.

2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in tes, as Orestă.

3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters: as, regnă, mariă, cornuă.

4. In the Adverbs ită, posteă, the Conjunction quiă, and the Interjection ejă.

Obs. a in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in eus is doubtful: as Theseă.

§ 746. **e** is *long*:

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension: as, diē: and consequently in hodiē, quarē. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative: as, fidē (= fidĕi).

2. In Greek words in e of the First Declension: as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted: as, Tempē, cetē.

3. In
    s
    i
    t
    j

4. In
    S
    e
    I

5. In

e is *short*
verb), fuer

§ 747. **i**
docuistī, vi

i is *short*

1. In
    fo

2. In
    of
    A

i is *doubt*
Obs. ŭtĭo

§ 748. **o**
But **o** is

1. In I
    as

2. Whe

3. In n

o is *short*
tell me (both
phrase nesc
quidem: as,

§ 749. **u** i

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation: as, monĕ. But the following are doubtful: vidĕ, valĕ, cavĕ; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), habĕ, tacĕ, manĕ, jubĕ.

4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension: as, doctē, aegrē: with the exception of benĕ, malĕ, supernĕ, infernĕ (in Lucr. and Auson.), internĕ.

5. In the Adverbs ferē, fermē, and the Interjection ohĕ.

> Obs. Concerning monosyllables in e, *see* § 744.

e is *short* in all other words: as, dominĕ, regĕ (subs. and verb), fuerĕ.

§ 747. i is generally *long* : as, puerī, corporī, dicī, audī, docuistī, vigintī.

i is *short :*

1. In nisĭ, quasĭ, sicubĭ, necubĭ, and in the very rare form cŭĭ for cūī.

2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, Dat. Paridĭ, Voc. Alexĭ.

i is *doubtful* in mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ubĭ.

> Obs. ŭtĭque always; but always ibīdem, ubīque.   We find also cŭ... ae.

§ 748. o is mostly common: as, amŏ, amatŏ, leŏ, octŏ.

But o is *long :*

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension: as, dominō, deō, magnō.

2. When it represents the Greek ω: as, Didō, Plutō.

3. In monosyllables: as, dō, prō.

o is *short* in egŏ, duŏ, modŏ, *only*, putŏ, *I think*, and cedŏ, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), nesciŏ, *I know not* (in the phrase nesciŏ quis), and quando when compounded with quidem: as, quandŏquidem.

§ 749. u is always *long* : as, cornū, auditū.

II. Final Consonants.

§ 750. **as** is almost always *long :* as, mensās, civitās, laudās.

as is *short* only :

1. In anăs, anătis, *a duck.*

2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension : as, Arcadăs.   And some Greek Noms. as Iliăs, &c.

> *Obs.* In vas (vădis) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. **es** is almost always *long :* as, vulpēs, *a fox*, leonēs.

es is only *short :*

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive : as, milěs, ĭtis, interprěs, ětis : and *adj.* praepěs, ětis ; but mercēs, ēdis ; pēs, pědis ; abiēs, abiětis.

2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives : as, Arcaděs : also Hippomaněs (*Nom. Sing. Neut.*), Demostheněs (*Voc. Sing.*).

3. From esse, *to be ;* as, es, aděs, potěs.

4. In the Preposition peněs.

§ 752. **is** is usually *short :* as, navĭs, lapidĭs, regĭs, regerĭs.

But **is** is *long :*

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns : as, musīs, dominīs (contr. from musa + is, domino + is : *see* §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), nobīs, vobīs.

2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for es) ; as, omnīs (or omneis) for omnēs.

3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation : as, audīs (= audi + is : *see* § 104).

4. Also in the contracted forms velīs, nolīs, malīs ; sīs, possīs.

> *Obs.* 1. In Fut. Perf. Indicative, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, as fuerĭs.
>
> *Obs.* 2. Monosyllables are mostly long : as, vīs (noun and verb), glīs : but ĭs, quĭs (prons.), are short.

§ 753. os is almost always *long* : as, puerōs, honōs (ōriε), arbōs (ŏris).   (But arbŏr, honŏr, etc.: see § 760.)

os is only *short* :

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as. avŏs servŏs (= avus, servus): *see* § 19. *Obs.*

2. In impŏs (ŏtis), compŏs (ŏtis).

3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, Thetidŏs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argŏs (neut.): besides ŏs, ossis, already mentioned.

§ 754. us is usually *short* : as, dominŭs, gradŭs, sumŭs.

It is *long* only :

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, virtūs, ūtis: but pecŭs, pecŭdis.

2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, manūs.

3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs: but we have polypŭs, Oedipŭs, from πούς.

§ 755. ys in some Greek words is *long:* as Phorcȳs, Erinnȳs: in Tethys it is common (Tethy̆s).

§ 756. Final syllables in **b, d, t** are short; as, ăb, apŭd, amăt.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in *t ;* as, irritât for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. c. Final syllables in **c** are mostly short: as, nĕc, donĕc.

EXCEPTIONS. Lāc, *milk ;* hīc (adv.), *here* (the pronoun hĭc is doubtful) ; hūc, *hither ;* sīc, *thus :* the Imperatives dīc, dūc (shortened from dīce, dūce).   Făc is short (for făcĕ).

§ 758. l. Final syllables in **l** are short: as, semĕl, animăl.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables : as, sōl, sāl, nīl.

§ 759. n. Final syllables in **n** are short: as, carmĕn, tamĕn, ăn.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables : as, rēn (*a kidney*), sīn (= si non, *but if not*), splēn (*the spleen*), ēn (*lo*), nōn (*nι ;*).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *as* and *es* (First Decl.): as, Aeneān, Anchisēn, Penelopēn.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, Lacedaemōn, Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. r. Final syllables in **r** are short : as, pŭĕr, vĭr sem*pĕr*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables : as, fūr (*a thief*), pār (subs. and adject.), lār, vēr, cūr. (But cŏr, *the heart*, is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek : as, aēr (ἀήρ), *the air* ; aethēr (αἰθήρ), *the sky*.

N.B. Celtibĕr is common. (Mart.)

B. METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (ῥέω, ῥυθμός) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals ; as in the following lines :

Quádrŭpĕ | dántĕ pŭ|trém sŏnĭ|tú quătĭt | úngŭlă | cámpūm.—**Virg.**

Pássĕr | délĭcĭ|ae mĕ|ae pu|éllae.—**Catullus.**

Flúmĭnă | cónstĭtĕ|rĭnt ă|cútō.—**Hor.**

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called **Arsis** (ἄρσις, ictus), and is denoted by the sign ʹ. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, vī́dimus, ár̆ma, tĕnū́ia, dḗĕrat. The unaccented syllable is called **Thesis** (θέσις), and is denoted by the sign ʻ : as, ár̆mà.

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the Arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long : as, Ĭtălí̆am (Virg. Æn. I. 2). The Grammarians call this Diastŏle.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (pĕdēs): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second *five*; and the third *four*.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names :

1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

◡◡ Pyrrhĭchius (Pyrrhic)... *pătĕr, bŏnĕ.*
◡⏑ Ĭambus .... *ădēst, mĕō.*
⏑◡ Trŏchaeus (Trochee).... *ármă, flēbĭt.*
–– Spondēus (Spondee)..... *ōrās, ēmī.*

2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

◡◡◡ Tribrăchys .... *hŏmĭnĕs, rĕcĭpĕ.*
–◡◡ Dactȳlus (Dactyl)...... *ōmnĭă, fēcĭmŭs.*

‿‿⊥ Anapaestus (Anapaest) . *ăbĕŏ, lĕgĕrēs.*
‿⊥‿ Amphibrăchys .... *ămābăt, dĭēbŭs.*
‒‿⊥ Creticus or Amphimaccr, *ēxplĕŏ, sērvĭtŭs.*
‿⊥‒ Bacchīus .... *ămīcōs, sŭpēllēx.*
‒⊥‿ Antibacchīus .... *aūdīrĕ, rēxissĕ.*
‒‒‒ Molossus .... *haūsĭstĭ, dīvĭnaē.*

3. Of Four Syllables.

‿‿‿‿ Proceleusmaticus ...... *ĭnĭtĭă, cĕlĕrĭtĕr.*
‿‿⊥‒ Ionicus a Minore ...... *ŏnĕrābŭnt, gĕnĕrōsī.*
⊥‒‿‿ ——— a Majore ...... *ulcīscĭtŭr, sōlāmĭnĕ.*
⊥‿‿‒ Choriambus .... *ērĭpĭŭnt, simplĭcĭtās.*
‿⊥⊥‿ Antispastus .... *ĭnēxhaūstŭs, pĕrīllŭstrĭs.*
⊥‿‿‿ Paeon Primus .... *ēxĭgŭŭs, rēspĭcĭăt.*
‿⊥‿‿ ——— Secundus .... *ŏbēdĭĕt, dŏmēstĭcŭs.*
‿‿⊥‿ ——— Tertius .... *ĭnĭmīcŭs, pĕpŭlērĕ.*
‿‿‿⊥ ——— Quartus .... *ĭnĭtĭŏ, mĭsĕrĭcōrs.*
‿‒‒‒ Epitritus Primus....... *lăbōrāndō, sălūtāntēs.*
‒‿‒‒ ——— Secundus .... *ādmĭnĭstrāns, ĭmpĕrātrĭx.*
‒‒‿‒ ——— Tertius ...... *aūctōrĭtās, intēllĭgēns.*
‒‒‒‿ ——— Quartus ..... *āssērtătŏr, ĭnfīnĭtŭs.*

Obs. Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called Diiambus, Ditrochaeus, and Dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter. Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (μέτρα) which they contain.

Obs. A Dactyl or Choriambus constitute each one *measure:* an Anapaest, Iambus, or Trochee only a *half-measure.*

Hence a line consisting of six Dactyls is called *Hexameter* (ἕξ, *six*); while a line consisting of the same number of Iambi or Trochees, is called *Trimeter* (τρεῖς, *three*); and a line consisting of four Anapaests, *Dimeter* (δίς, *twice*).

§ 765. Elision (ēlīsio) or **Synăloepha** (συναλοιφή) is the strik-ing-out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *m.* at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h,* and is indicated by the sign ⌢: as,

Cōntĭcŭĕre ōmnes (*read,* cōntĭcŭ|ēr'ōmn|ēs)

Mĕ mĭsĕrum ĕxclāmăt (mē mĭsĕr'|ēxclām|ăt).

Pērque hĭĕmēs (pĕrqu'hĭĕ|mēs).

Ūmbrārum haec sēdēs (ūmbrār'|haec sēd|ēs).

Obs. 1. Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse: as,

Si ad vitulam spectas.

Obs. 2. The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare: as,

intimō ămore.

Obs. 3. The Elision of an iambus is avoided: as,

disce mĕō exemplo.

Obs. 4. If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of est is elided, and not the final vowel: thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read
nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

Obs. 5. Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided: as,

Ter sunt | conat|ī im|ponere | Peliŏ | Ossam.—Virg.

Obs. 6. The Interjections ô, heu, ah, proh, are not elided: as,

Ō patér | ŏ hŏmĭn|um di|vumque aet|erna pot|estas.—Virg.
Āh ĕgŏ | non alit|er trist|es e|vincere | morbos.—Tib.

Obs. 7. Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel: as,

Te Cory|dŏn, ŏ Āl|exi ; tra|hit sua | quemque vol|uptas.—Virg.
Īnsŭlāe | Ioni|o in mag|no quas | dira Ce|laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

Obs. 8. Earlier writers sometimes elide *s* : as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. **Synaerĕsĭs** (συναίρεσις) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign ⌢, ⌣. It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse: as,

Si len|to fue|rint al|vĕāria | vimine | texta.—Virg.
Caucasi|asque re|fert volu|cres fur|tumque Pro|methĕĭ.—Virg.

So Orpheă̑, Typhoĕ̑ă.

Synaeresis is chiefly found in the following words: dĕ̑inde, prŏ̑inde, abĭĕ̑te, ariĕ̑te, dĕĕ̑sse and its derivatives, antĕhāc, and in the whole verb antĕ̑ire.

§ 767. **Diaerĕsis** (διαίρεσις) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables : as, pictaï.

§ 768
Hexame
it is als
six dact
syllable
by a tr
is comm
dactyls,
a dacty.

§ 769
binatio

(a)

(b)
(c)
(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)
(h)

(i)

(k)
(l)

(m)

(n)

(o)
(p)

(q)

I. Dactylic Hexameter Metre.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls ($\,\underline{}\smile\smile$), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee ($-\smile$), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee ($--$). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
$\underline{}\smile\smile$	$\underline{}\smile\smile$	$\underline{}\smile\smile$	$\underline{}\smile\smile$	$\underline{}\smile\smile$	$-\smile$
$\underline{}\,-$	$\underline{}\,-$	$\underline{}\,-$	$\underline{}\,-$	$\underline{}\,-$	$--$

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four Dactyls.*

(a) Rádĭt ĭtér lĭquĭdúm cĕlĕrés nĕquĕ commovet alas.

2. *One Spondee and Three Dactyls.*

(b) Īmpēnsắquĕ sŭí pŏtĕrít sŭpĕrare cruoris,

(c) Témpŏră lăbūntŭr tăcĭtísquĕ sĕnescimus annis,

(d) Nítĭmŭr ĭn vĕtĭtúm sempér cŭpĭmusque negata,

(e) Áspĭcĭúnt ŏcŭlís sŭpĕrí mŏrtalia justis;

3. *Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.*

(f) Dúm vĭrés ānníquĕ sĭnúnt tŏlĕrate labores,

(g) Quárūm quáe mĕdĭá'st nŏn ést hăbĭtabilis aestu,

(h) Cúrvăríquĕ mănús ĕt ădúncōs crescer' in ungues,

(i) Át pătĕr út tērrás mūndúmquĕ rŭbescere vidit,

(k) Númĭnă néc spērní sĭnĕ poenā nostra sinamus,

(l) Cóntĭgĕránt răpĭdás lĭmósī Phasidos undas;

4. *Three Spondees and One Dactyl.*

(m) Nátūram éxpēllás fūrcā tămĕn usque recurret,

(n) Út dēsínt vĭrés tămĕn ést laudanda voluntas,

(o) Áut prŏdéssĕ vŏlúnt aút délectare poetae,

(p) Pártŭrĭúnt mōntés nāscétūr ridiculus mus;

5. *Four Spondees.*

(q) Éx aēquó cāptís ārdébānt mentibus ambo.

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee, but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called **Spondaic.** It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

> Constitit atque oculis Phrygia ắgmĭnă cĭrcūmspexit :
> Cara deum soboles, magnŭm Jŏvĭs ĭncrēmēntum :
> Cum patribus populoquĕ, penắtĭbŭs ĕt māgnis dis.

Obs. Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,
> Aut levis ocreas lentō dūcŭnt ārgento.—Virg. Aen. VII. 634.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one Caesura (from *caee*, "to cut") which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five Caesuras :

> Dónec || erís || felíx || multós || numerábis || amícos.

§ 772. The **Caesura** may be either **strong** or **weak.** The *strong Caesura* is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable : as,

> Árma virúmque canó ǁ Trojaé qui prímus ab óris.

The *weak Caesura* is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a Dactyl : as,

> Ó passí graviόra || dabít deus hís quoque finem.

§ 773. The **Caesuras** are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (ἡμι- and μέρος): hence, **Triemimeral,** after the first three half feet ; **Penthemimeral,** after the first five half feet ; **Hephthemimeral,** after the first seven half feet ; **Ennehemimeral,** after the first nine half feet.

Obs. The two short syllables of the Dactyl are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *Penthemimeral,* or *Hephthemimeral* Caesura. The Penthemimeral strong Caesura is the most common. The Hephthemimeral is generally used along with the Triemimeral : as,

> Fáma malúm || quo nón aliúd || velócius úllum.

§ 775. Besides the Pause of the Caesura, a Hexameter usually has another pause, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two pauses in addition to the Penthemimeral Caesura : as,

> Tántae | mólis erát || Románam | cóndere géntem.

§ 776. The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables.   But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position ; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere.   Compare Virg. Aen. 3, 680 (cўpă | rĭssĭ) ; Bucol. 8, 1 (Ălphĕsĭ | boei) ; etc.

> *Obs.* 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it.   Hence such endings as laus ĕst (Hor.), ūsa ĕst (Virg.), are admissible.

> *Obs.* 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect : as,
>
> Vértitur íntereā coelum, ét ruit óceanó Nóx (Virg.).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter entirely dactyls or entirely spondees.   An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement : an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement.   These effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines :

> Quádrupedánte putrém sonitú quatit úngula cámpum. .
>
> Ílli intér sesé magná vi bráchia tóllunt.

§ 778. *Hypermeter.*—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (ὑπὲρ μέτρον).   But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel : as,

> Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis ārbŭtŭs hŏrrĭda, *Et* steriles, &c.—Virg.
>
> Jamque iter emensi turres ac tēctă Lătīnō*rum Ardua* cernebant, &c.—Virg.

> *Obs.* In Virgil, the redundant syllable is in most cases the enclitic -que.

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet : as,

> Póstera lúx oritúr.   Linguís animísque favéte,
> Núnc dicénda boná ‖ súnt bona vérba dié.—Ov.

It has the following scheme :

$$\_\ \smile\smile \mid \_\ \smile\smile \mid \_\ \parallel \_\ \smile\smile \mid \_\ \smile\smile \mid \smile$$

Hence it appears:

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).

2. That each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. $(2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5.$ Hence the name Pentameter.)

3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.

4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).

5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

Obs. The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant: as,

Víx Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fuít.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable: the first half admits of the following four varieties:

1. Two Dactyls: as,

Crédĭdĭmús gĕnĕrí || nóminibúsque tuís:

2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl: as,

Trájēctấm glădĭó || mórte períre juvát:
Cúm mălă pér lōngấs || cónvaluére morís: (most usual form):

3. Two spondees: as,

Súprēmấm bēllís || ímposuísse manúm.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse:

(1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

Obs. But Catullus, Propertius, and others employ quadrisyllabic, and, *less frequently*, trisyllabic endings.

(2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

(3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

Obs. The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

§ 7... six fe... ($\delta\iota\pi o\delta$... the fo...

§ 7... admit... larly... meral...

Obs....

§ 78... short... we of...
(A.)...
(B.)...
(C.)...
3rd pl...

III. Trimeter Iambic (Acatalectic) Verse.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (διποδίαι ιαμβικαί), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

$$\cup \acute{-} \mid \cup \acute{-} \mid \cup \parallel \acute{-} \mid \cup \acute{-} \mid \simeq \acute{-} \mid \cup \underset{.}{\simeq} \mid$$

§ 783. Hence it appears that the *odd* places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

> Mĕtŭís pavórquĕ ‖ fúnus ét frĕndĕ́ns dolŏr,
> Prŏnást timóri ‖ sémper ín pĕjús fidĕ̄s.

Obs. A Verse is called *Catalectic* (καταλήγω, *to leave off*), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

(A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.

(B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.

(C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

> Quae poénă mănĕat mémet ét sedés scio ;
>
> Hic laéva frénis dóctă mŏdĕrandís manus;
>
> Pyrrhí manú mactétur ét tŭmŭlúm riget,
>
> Tu tú malórum máchinátrīx făcĭnorum ;
>
> An ălĭqua poénae párs meae ígnotást mihi,
>
> Lăcĕraĕve fíxis únguibús venaé fluant,
>
> Quĭn pŏtĭus íra cóncitúm pectús doma;
>
> Fas ómne cédăt ăbĕat éxpulsús pudor,
>
> Evásit ét pĕnĕtrăle fúnestum áttigit,
>
> Parum ipse fídĕns mĭhĭmet ín tutó tua.

Appendix I.—The Calendar.

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quinctilis* and *Sextilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

(1). Kălendae, arum; *the Kalends:* being the 1st day of the month.

(2). Nōnae, arum; the Nones : being either the 5th or 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.*

(3). Īdūs, uum (*f.*); *the Ides;* being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late :

"In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day."

Consequently in the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its "Kalends," the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (prĭdie Kălendas). Thus, the 31st of December is called the *day before the Kalends of January:* often written pridie Kal. Jan. Then the day before that is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table :—

Calendar for the Month of December.

1. Kalendis Decembribus.	17.	XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.	
2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18.	XV.	„ „
3. III. „ „	19.	XIV.	„ „
4. Pridie Nonas Decembres.	20.	XIII.	„ „
5. Nonis Decembribus.	21.	XII.	„ „
6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22.	XI.	„ „
7. VII. „ „	23.	X.	„ „
8. VI. „ „	24.	IX.	„ „
9. V. „ „	25.	VIII.	„ „
10. IV. „ „	26.	VII.	„ „
11. III. „ „	27.	VI.	„ „
12. Pridie Idus Decembres.	28.	V.	„ „
13. Idibus Decembribus.	29.	IV.	„ „
14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30.	III.	„ „
15. XVIII. „ „	31.	Pridie	„ „
16. XVII. „ „			

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them.

> *Obs.* Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both die and ante were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with ante, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under its government: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Maias, usually written a. d. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by ante.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante dies octāvum et septĭmum Kălendas Octōbres cŏmĭtiis dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplĭcātio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres. *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Kalendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissextile (bis-sextus). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as prior and posterior.

NOTE.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page :—

§ 928. CALENDARIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.
2.	VI.	IV. } ante Nonas.	IV. } ante Nonas.	IV. } ante Nonas.
3.	V. } ante Nonas.	III.	III.	III.
4.	IV.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III.	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.
7.	NONIS.	VII.	VII.	VII.
8.	VIII.	VI.	VI.	VI.
9.	VII.	V. } ante Idus.	V. } ante Idus.	V. } ante Idus.
10.	VI.	IV.	IV.	IV.
11.	V. } ante Idus.	III.	III.	III.
12.	IV.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX.	XVIII.	XVI.
15.	IDIBUS.	XVIII.	XVII.	XV.
16.	XVII.	XVII.	XVI.	XIV.
17.	XVI.	XVI.	XV.	XIII.
18.	XV.	XV.	XIV.	XII.
19.	XIV.	XIV.	XIII.	XI.
20.	XIII.	XIII.	XII.	X. } Ante Kalendas Martias.
21.	XII.	XII.	XI.	IX.
22.	XI.	XI.	X.	VIII.
23.	X. } Ante Kalendas (of the month following).	X.	IX. } Ante Kalendas (of the month following).	VII.
24.	IX.	IX. } Ante Kalendas (of the month following).	VIII.	VI.
25.	VIII.	VIII.	VII.	V.
26.	VII.	VII.	VI.	IV.
27.	VI.	VI.	V.	III.
28.	V.	V.	IV.	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
29.	IV.	IV.	III.	
30.	III.	III.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	
31.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).		

APPENDIX II.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the as (assis), or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the as were designated as follows :—

Uncia,	*one ounce ;*	$\frac{1}{12}$		of an as.
Sextans, ntis,	*two ounces ;*	$\frac{2}{12}$, that is,	$\frac{1}{6}$	,,
Quadrans, ntis,	*three* ,,	$\frac{3}{12}$, ,,	$\frac{1}{4}$	,,
Triens, ntis,	*four* ,,	$\frac{4}{12}$, ,,	$\frac{1}{3}$	,,
Quincunx, ncis,	*five* ,,	$\frac{5}{12}$		,,
Sēmis, issis,	*six* ,,	$\frac{6}{12}$, ,,	$\frac{1}{2}$	,,
Septunx, ncis	*seven* ,,	$\frac{7}{12}$		,,
Bes, bessis,	*eight* ,,	$\frac{8}{12}$, ,,	$\frac{2}{3}$	,,
Dodrans,* ntis	*nine* ,,	$\frac{9}{12}$, ,,	$\frac{3}{4}$	,,
Dextans,† ntis,	*ten* ,,	$\frac{10}{12}$, ,,	$\frac{5}{6}$	,,
Deunx, ncis,	*eleven* ,,	$\frac{11}{12}$		,,

* = de-quadrans. † = de-sextans.

Obs. The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus terna jūgĕra et septunces (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)* : hēres ex asse, *heir to the entire estate*, ex dodrante, *to three-fourths*, etc. So fēnus ex triente factum ĕrat bessĭbus (Cic.), *interest had risen from* $\frac{1}{3}$ *per cent. (per month) to* $\frac{2}{3}$; or *from 4 to 8 per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the as was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value (" *vilem* redigatur ad assem," Hor. Sat. 1, 1, 43). The dēnārius was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the sestertius (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to 2½ asses, or a little more than 2*d.* The sesterce was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

Obs. Sestertius is a contraction for sēmis tertius, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e. 2½. This was often written IIS, whence the common abbreviation HS or H̄S.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 and under are counted regularly : as, mille sestertii, 1000 *sesterces ;* trecenti sestertii, 300 *sesterces.* But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural sestertia was employed, with which millia must be understood, unless expressed : as duo sestertia or duo millia sestertiûm, 2000 *sesterces.*

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, dĕcies, &c., are used with sestertium or HS., the words " centēna millia" being understood. Thus

dĕcies sestertium (= decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

Argenti ad summam sertertii dĕcies in aerārium rettŭlit, *he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces*.— LIV. 45, 4.

Syngrāpha sestertii centies, *a Bill of ten millions of sesterces*.— CIC. *Phil.* 2, 37.

Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margarītam mercātus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces*.—SUET. Caes. 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement: as, accēpi vīcies dŭcenta trīginta quinque millia quadringentos dĕcem et septem nummos, 2,235,417 *sesterces*.—CIC. *Verr.* 1, 14.

APPENDIX III.—ROMAN NAMES.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called nōmen, being *the name of his* gens; the third, cognōmen, being that *of his family* (fămĭlia); the first, praenōmen, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called agnōmen, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africanus*. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus*.

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above, was also called P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. Am. 1, 3) is called M. F., *i. e.* Marci filius; and Cn. Pompēius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompēius, Sex. F., Cn. N. Strabo; *i. e. son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus.*

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompēia, Semprōnia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius.

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (cognomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, etc.

Appendix IV.—Abbreviations.

§ 936. A. Praenomina.

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn. (Gn.)	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

§ 937. B. Titles, &c. (Ancient).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus (surnames of Jupiter).
Cos.	Consul.		
Coss.	Consules.	Pont Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Des.	Designatus.	Quir.	Quirites.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	S.P.Q.R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
Imp.	Imperator.*	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis.
P. C.	Patres Conscripti.		

* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

§ 938. C. Miscellaneous (Ancient).

A.	Absolvo,[1] Antiquo.[2]	F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno.[1]		
N. L.	Non liquet.[1]	H. C. S. E.	Hic conditus situs est.[3]
U. R.	Uti Rogas.[2]	H. M. H. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur.[3]
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.		
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	Libertas.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	M. P.	Mille Passuum.
D. M.	Dis Manibus.[3]	N.	Nepos.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Ob.	Obiit.
F.	Filius.	Resp.	Respublica.
S. D. or S. only.	Salutem dicit.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
		S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo.[4]
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit.[4]	Pot.	Potestas.
F. C.	Faciendum curavit.[3]	V.	Vixit.[3]

[1] Judicial formula.　　　　[2] Used in voting (with respect to laws).
[3] Sepulchral.　　　　[4] Epistolary.

---

§ 939. D. Modern.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	leg.	lege, legendum.
		LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cet.	cetera.		
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd.	codex, codices	MS., MSS.	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.		
del.	dele, deleatur.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.B.	Nota bene.
e.g.	exempli gratiâ.	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
etc.	et cetera.		
h.e.	hoc est.	Obs.	Observa.
I.H.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	P.S.	Post scriptum.
		q.v.	quod vide.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum.	sc.	scilicet.
		sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
I. ctus (Ictus).	Juris consultus.		
ibid., ib.	ibidem.		
id.	idem.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.		
		V.D.M.	Verbi divini Minister.
l.c., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.	V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.

APPENDIX V.—VERSUS MEMORIALES.

1. DIFFERENCE OF QUANTITY IN CERTAIN WORDS.

1 Est *ăcer* in silvis, equus *ācer* Olympia vincit.
  Non *appāret* iners, faciendas *appăret* ut res.
    Calĭgas, manicas *călĭgas*que ubi cernere non est.
  Voce tremente *cănet*, qui toto vertice *cānet*.
5 Deficit ille *cănis*, cui candent tergora *cānis*.
  In magno et *cāro* prostat *căro* rara macello.
  Cēdo facit cessi, *cecĭdi* cado, caedo *cecīdi*.
  Fert ancilla *cŏlum*, penetrat res humida *cōlum*.
  Vin' bonus esse *cŏmes*? Sermones occipe *cōmes*.
10 Compte *cŏmas* puer; heus! *cōmis cŏmes* esto magistro.
  Quod mihi *consuĕram*, *consuēram* tendere rete.
  Bellandi *cupĭdo* damno est sua saepe *cupīdo*.
    Non violant *decŏris* memores praecepta *decōris*.
  Dedĕre dis animum par est, qui tanta *dedēre*.
15 Vin' tibi *dĭcamus*, cui carmina nostra *dīcemus*?
  Diffĭdit is foedus, male qui *diffīdit* amico.
  Per *rĕges*, deus, atque *dŭces dūces*que *rĕges*que.
    Carnem sanus *ĕdit*, carmen doctissimus *ēdit*.
  Edŭcat hic catulos, quos mox *edūcat* in apros.
20 Si sapis, *ēs*, ut sis: nimirum non *ĕs* edendo.
    Qui *făbula* ludunt, pueris et *fābula* grata est.
  Ni sit fida *fĭdes*, non *fīdes*: quaere fideles.
  Decepit me saepe *frĕtum* nimis abiete *frētum*.
    Per quod quis peccat, per *ĭdem* punitur et *īdem*.
25 *Indĭcat* bellum rex huic, qui se *indīcat* hostem.
    Non talos *jacĕrent*, si ludicra prava *jacērent*.
    Si potans sermone *lăbes*, fuge: nam prope *lābes*.
  Est gravis ille *lăbor*, cujus sub pondere *lābor*.
  Cum ratione *lĕges*, quem magna ad munera *lēges*.
30 Tu, quaecunque *lĕgis*, non instar *lēgis* habebis.
  In silvis *lepŏres*, in verbis quaere *lepōres*.
  Imberbis *lēvis*; *lĕvis* est, qui pondere parvo est.
  Non *lĭber*, ut sis *līber*, aget, sed recta voluntas.
    Deceptura viros pingit *măla* femina *mālas*.
35 In rate triste *mălum*, quum fracta est turbine *mālus*.
  Mālŏ mihi pulchrum *mālo* decerpere *mālum*.
  Nobilis est mulier *matrōna*, at *Matrŏna* flumen.
  Officium *mĭseris* offers, si *mīseris* aera.
  Frumentum *mŏlĭtur*, sed homo *mōlĭtur* agenda.
40 Sunt bene *mŏrati* multi nec in urbe *mŏrati*.
    Non sunt se fisi, *nĭsĭ* qui sunt numine *nīsĭ*.

Nĭtĕre cum studio, si vis aliquando *nĭtēre*.
Sit *nŏta nōta* : *nŏtus* ventus, sed *nōtus* amicus.
    Oblītus decoris ne dedecore *oblĭtus* adsit.
45   *Obsĭdet obsĭdens, possĭdens possĭdet* exin.
    Occĭdet latro, misere quoad *occĭdet* ipse.
    Omnia jam *fĭunt, fĭĕri* quae posse negabam.
    Os ōris produc, sed *ŏs ossis* corripe, quaeso.
     Stagnat sicca *pălus*, fixus stat *pālus* acutus.
50   Saepe puer *pāret, păret* ut sibi dona parentis.
    Gaudet uterque *părens*, quum filius est bene *pārens*.
    Pendĕre vult justus, sed fur *pendēre* recusat.
    Est color in *pīca pīcoque* nivisque *pĭcisque*.
    Ludo *pĭla, pĭlum* contorqueo, *pīla* columna est.
55   Pro reti aut regione *plăga* est, pro verbere *plāga*.
    Sunt cives urbis *pŏpulus*, sed *pōpulus* arbor.
    Si vitare *pŏtes*, ne plurima pocula *pōtes*.
    Prŏfectus ostende, schola non ante *prŏfectus*.
     Non quae quisque *rĕfert*, sapientis discere *rēfert*.
60   Dat *rēpente* gradu serpens, fuge, damna *rĕpente*.
    Si qua *sēde sĕdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,
     Illa *sēde sĕde*, si nova tuta minus.
    Lacte *sĕrum, sērum*que die secernitur ipso.
    Num natale *sŏlum* placet omni tempore *sōlum* ?
65   Hos non *suspĭcio*, quibus est *suspīcio* prompta.
     Integer est *tōtus, tŏtus* est, quotus ordine, quivis.
    Trībula grana terit, *trĭbuli* nascuntur in agris.
     Gressum fige *vădis*, quando per flumina *vādis*.
    Spondet vas *vădis*, at vas *vāsis* continet escam.
70   Si transire *vĕlis* maris undas, utere *vēlis*.
    Vēneris ad *Vĕneris*, mecum *vĕnēris* ut inde.
    Merx *vēnit* numis, *vĕnit* huc aliunde profectus.
    Vincĭtur victus, vinctus non *vincĭtur* ultro.
    Ni probitate *vĭres*, male jactas, inscie, *vīres*.
75   Ut rem quamque *vŏces*, debes cognoscere *vōces*.
    Vōmere quam tollis, *vŏmere* agrum terra videtur.

---

2. Difference of Meaning in certain Words.

Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed crescit *acanthus* in agris.
Plus *aetate* graves hieme atque *aestate* premuntur
Qui confirmat, *ait*, sed qui responsa dat, *inquit*.
80 *Alga* venit pelago, sed nascitur *ulva* palude.
Sancta voces *arcana*, putes *secreta* profana.
Arma tegunt corpus, quod figere *tela* minantur.
Armus brutorum est, *humerus* ratione fruentum.

Turbat *asilus* equos, miseros suscepit *asylum.*
85   Fac *felix* aliis videare tibique *beatus.*
Bilis inest felli, si *fel* vesica putatur.
    Qui sculpit, *caelat,* servans abscondita *celat.*
Splendent *candidus* atque *niger,* non *albus* et *ater.*
Haec *cassis* galea est, hi *casses* retia signant:
90 *Casside* conde caput, capiantur *cassibus* apri.
Clava ferit, *clavus* firmat, *clavis*que recludit.
Cominus ense ferit, jaculo cadit *eminus* ipse.
Comoedi scenam, *comedones* quaerite coenam.
Conamur magnam, *molimur* difficilem rem.
95 *Consortes* fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,
    Unum *collegas* efficit officium;
Sed caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa *sodales.*
Corrigit invitos, *emendat* cura sequaces.
    Sanguis inest venis, *cruor* est de corpore fusus.
100 Immotus *jacet,* at motus sunt signa *cubantis.*
Est *cutis* in carne, at detracta a corpore *pellis.*
    Delige cum cura, tum *dilige* semper amicum.
Deleo quod scriptum est, sed flammam *exstinguo* lucernae.
Longius ire nequit, quicunque *diutius* ivit.
105 Uxorem vir *ducit,* at illi femina *nubit.*
    Edicunt reges, *indicit* festa sacerdos;
Indicat auctorem facti, qui novit eundem.
Expetit hoc nemo, quod non satis *expedit* ipsi.
Expugnat capiens, *oppugnans* obsidet urbem.
110   *Fas* res divinas, at *jus* humana tuetur.
Forfice sartores, tonsores *forpice* gaudent,
    At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.
       est arcus, sed *fornax* saxa perurit.
        bet *furnum, fornace* hypocausta calescunt.
115   us *frenos,* vector quem flectit *habenis.*
      aic capitis, *frondem* dic arboris esse.
Gignit ager *fruges,* nascuntur in arbore *fructus.*
Vincentes *fugies,* sed victos ipse *fugabis.*
Quis *duxit* bellum, Poenus quod *gessit* et *egit?*
120 *Gibba* premit tergum, sed collo *struma* molesta est.
Bruto *gurgulio* est, homini *gula, guttur* utrique.
Esca *sapit* pulchre, quam *gustat* lingua libenter.
    Mobile *dependet,* sed res immobilis *haeret.*
Ales *hirundo* canit, nat *hirudo,* movetur *arundo.*
125 Arma movent *hostes, inimici* jurgia nectunt.
    Invidus invidiae reus ipse *invitus* agetur.
Castra *sacramentum, jusjurandum* fora poscunt.
    Lacteo lac sugo; *lacto* lac praebeo nato:

Infans dum *lactet*, nutrix hunc sedula *lactat*.
130 *Laetitiam* vultu prae te fers, *gaudia* mente.
Ne fer *laternam*, quum prodis, absque *lucerna*.
Non *licet* asse mihi, qui me non asse *licetur*.
Tango *lyram* digitis, sed *liram* vomere findo.
Ad mare *litus* habes, ambas ad flumina *ripas*.
135 Scripta *locos* praebent, praebent *loca* terra polusque.
    Humidus est intra *madidus*que est uvidus extra.
Articulus membri, sed *membrum* corporis est pars.
Mente pia *mensa* fruere, omni *mense* parata.
Venduntur *merces*, operantibus est data *merces*.
140 Sperne *minas* auri, vulgi contemne *minas*, rex.
Confundit temere *miserum* cum *paupere* tiro.
Muros cum vallis ac fossis *moenia* dicas.
Dat *mortem* natura, *necem* vis, fa aque *letum*.
Mulcet equos famulus, sed vaccas rustica *mulget*.
145 In muris *mures murí*que in moenibus insunt.
    Sis unus semper *nostrum nostri*que memento.
Nucleus in pomis, *granum* reperitur in herbis.
    Otia dant *odium*: non hoc habet otia multa.
Olfacis id, quod *olet*: *fragrat*, non *foetet* odorum.
150 Dic, *opus* est, *operam* confundere semper *opes*que.
Nox *operit* terras, fures te quum *opperiuntur*.
    Qui didicit, *gnarus*, qui exercuit, ille *peritus*.
Praeco vocet cives, adeat *caducifer* hostes.
Vas vitam, nummos *praes* praestat, *sponsor* utrumque.
155 *Prandia* nulla gulo nisi post *jentacula* sumit.
Prora prior, *puppis* pars ultima, et ima *carina*.
Prospera fert fortuna, deus dat *fausta* supremus.
Prunus habet *prunum*, *prunam* focus, aura *pruinam*.
    Forfice *tondentur*, quos stricta novacula *radit*.
160 Ipse *regit* cives *regnans* rex sive senatus.
Aemulus invidia, *rivalis* amore movetur.
Corpore *robustus* diceris, *pectore fortis*.
    In terris sunt *sancta*, deo quae *sacra* putantur.
Lignum est oblongum *acutum*, *clipeus*que rotundum est.
165 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste.
Seditiosus erit civis, gens victa *rebellis*.
Aetatis nostrae pars est extrema *senectus*.
Natura *sermo* fluit, est *oratio* facta.
Qui *simul* egreditur, non tecum semper it *una*.
170 Quae non sunt, *simulo*; quae sunt, ea *dissimulantur*.
Sperne merum, *contemne* pericula, *despice* vulgus.
    Tempora florescunt, dum cingant *tempora* cani.
Est *aetas* hominum, contra sunt *tempora* rerum.

Hastam dic *teretem*, sphaeram dic esse *rotundam*.
175 *Tranquillus* placide transit, recubante *quieto*.
   Ungula conculcat ; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*
   Est *vacuus* non obsessus, non plenus *inanis*.
   Miles *vallat* opus: stabulum *sepimus* et hortum.
   Si *via* longa tua est, sit *iter* non segne, viator.
180 Quos *vicit, vinxit*, dum *vixit*, barbarus hostis.
   Ne confunde *viros, vires, virus*que *virum*que.
   Illum tu *caveas*, tibi qui non cavit amicus.
   Coeptus erit laedi, qui laedere coeperit ipse.
   Consulo te doctum ; tibi *consulo*, dum tua curo.
185 *Conveniunt* alios alii, quos *convenit* inter.
   Imponis stupido, cui res *imponis* inanes.
   In studia *incumbas*, libris *incumbere* noli.
   Si nos dura *manent, maneat* constantia nobis.
   Sit persona *sui similis, similis sibi* res sit.
190 A moerore *vacet*, studiis cui rite *vacandum* est.

---

3. Names of Relationship.

Agnati patris, *cognati* matris habentur.
Dic *patruos* patris fratres, *amitas*que sorores.
Frater *avunculus* est, soror est *matertera*, matris.
Quos fratres generant natos, dices *patrueles*,
195 Sed *consobrinos* dic, quos peperere sorores ;
Quos soror et frater gignunt, dices *amitinos*.
Vir natae *gener* est, *nurus* est pro conjuge nati.
Uxoris genitor *socer* est, *socrus*que genitrix.
Vitricus haud verus pater est, materque *noverca*.
200 Ipse viri frater *levir*, sed *fratria* fratris
Uxor; *glos* uxor fratris, soror atque mariti.

---

4. The Muses.

Clio gesta canens transactis tempora reddit.
Melpomene tragico proclamat moesta boatu.
Comica lascivo gaudet sermone *Thalia*.
205 Dulciloquos calamos *Euterpe* flatibus urget.
Terpsichore affectus citharis movet, imperat, auget.
Plectra gerens *Erato* saltat pede, carmine, vultu.
Carmina *Calliope* libris heroica mandat.
Uranie coeli motus scrutatur et astra.
210 Signat cuncta manu, loquitur *Polyhymnia* gestu.
Mentis Apollineae vis has movet undique Musas,
In medio residens complectitur omnia *Phoebus*.
SM. L. G.

5. NAMES OF THE WINDS.

Asper ab axe ruit *Boreas,* furit *Eurus* ab ortu,
Auster amat medium solem, *Zephyrus*que cadentem.
215 Flant *Subsolanus, Vulturnus* et *Eurus* ab ortu ;
Circius occasum *Zephyrus*que *Favonius* adflant.
E solis medio surgunt *Notus, Africus, Auster ;*
Conveniunt *Aquilo, Boreas* et *Caurus* ab ursa.

---

6. SIGNS OF THE ZODIAC.

Sunt Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo,
220 Libraque, Scorpius, Arcitenens, Caper, Amphora, Pisces.

---

7. THE SEVEN WISE MEN OF GREECE.

Cum *Solone Thales, Cleobulus* cum *Periandro,*
Chilon Spartanus, *Pittacus* atque *Bias.*

---

8. THE FOUR SEASONS.

Ver, Aestas, Auctumnus, Hiems dominantur in anno.
Aestas a Geminis, *Auctumnus* Virgine surgit ;
225 *Bruma* Sagittifero, *Ver* Piscibus incipit esse.

---

9. THE NAMES OF THE DAYS OF THE WEEK.

Nomina quae septem cujusque adjuncta diebus
Hebdomadis, sex constituunt cum sole planetae.
Primum rite diem sibimet *Sol* vindicat almus.
Proxima fraterno succedit *Luna* nitori.
230 Tertius insequitur rutilo *Mars* sidere fulgens.
Mercurius quartum signat mediumque dierum.
Ab *Jove* quinta dies insigne est nomen adepta.
Sexta salutiferum sequitur *Venus* atque parentem.
Cuncta supergressi *Saturni* septima lux est.

THE END.

LATIN DICTIONARIES,

BY WM. SMITH, LL.D.,

CLASSICAL EXAMINER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, AND EDITOR OF THE DICTIONARIES OF
'GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES, BIOGRAPHY, MYTHOLOGY, AND GEOGRAPHY,' &c.

1.

A LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY,

BASED ON THE WORKS OF FORCELLINI AND FREUND.

Sixth Edition. Revised and corrected. One Volume (1200 pp.), Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

This work holds an intermediate place between the Thesaurus of Forcellini and the ordinary School Dictionaries. It makes no attempt to supersede Forcellini, which would require a dictionary equally large; but it aims at performing the same service for the Latin language as Liddell and Scott's Lexicon has done for the Greek. It therefore avoids those minute subdivisions and numerous quotations which, however useful in a Thesaurus, render a Dictionary less practically useful to students. In the New Edition very many false references, which are found in all Dictionaries even the most recent, have been corrected. Great attention has been paid to etymology, in which department especially this work is admitted by the most competent scholars to maintain a superiority over all existing Latin Dictionaries.

" Of Latin and English Lexicons, the best representation of the scholarship of the day *is* undoubtedly that of Dr. Wm. Smith."—REV. J. W. DONALDSON, D.D., *late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

2.

A SMALLER LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.

WITH A DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES, AND TABLES OF THE ROMAN CALENDAR,
WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

ABRIDGED FROM THE ABOVE WORK, FOR THE USE OF JUNIOR CLASSES.

40th Thousand. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

3.

A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

FOR BEGINNERS.

COMPREHENDING

I. A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY ARRANGED ACCORDING TO SUBJECTS.

II. A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY ARRANGED ACCORDING TO ETYMOLOGY.

III. A FIRST LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY TO PHÆDRUS, CORNELIUS NEPOS, AND CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

Second Edition. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

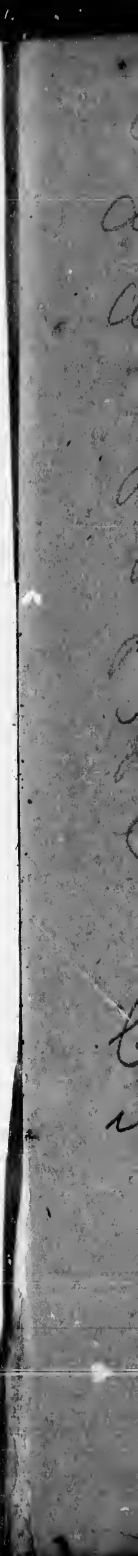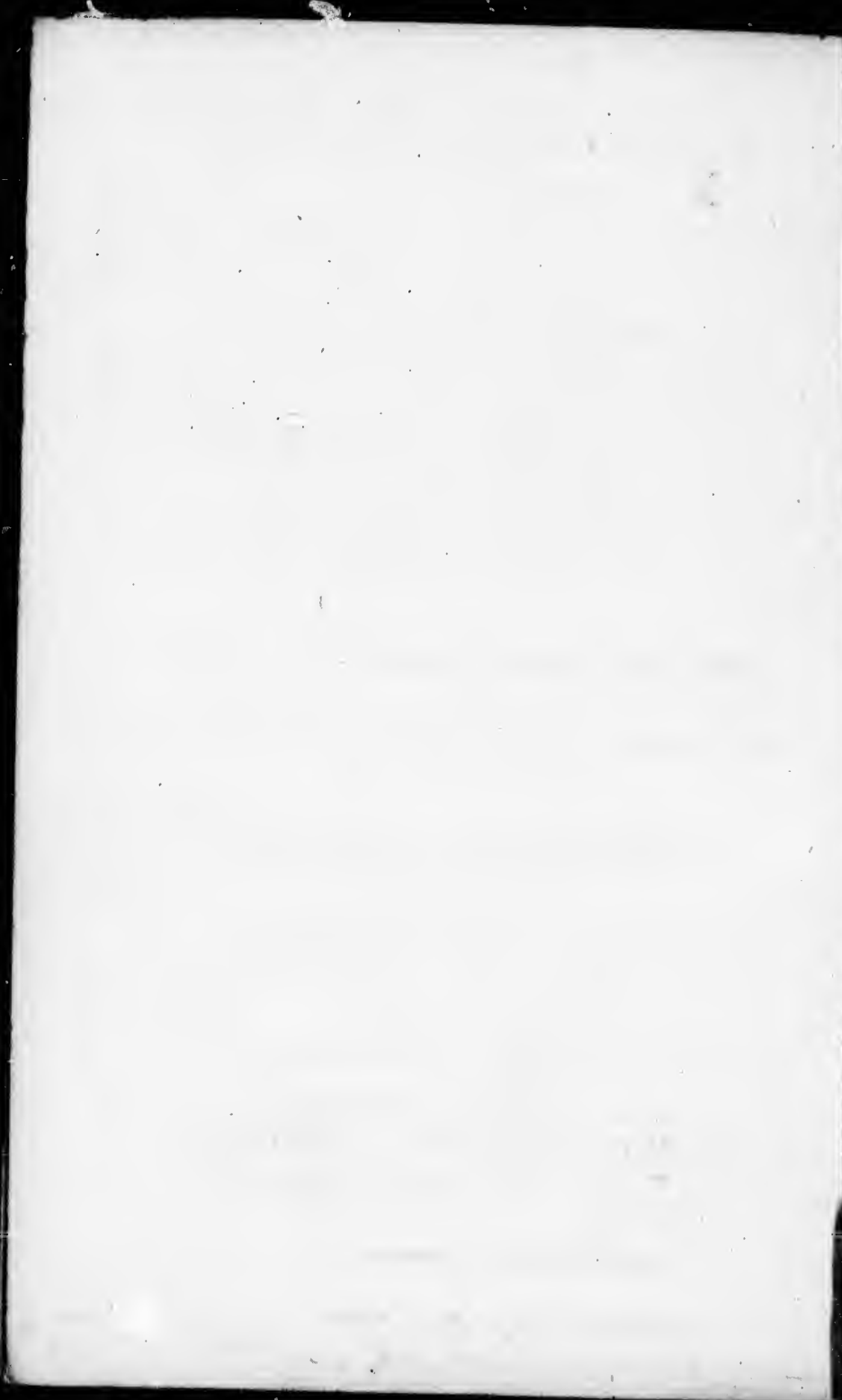This work is designed to assist boys in acquiring a copious vocabulary of the Latin language, and in learning the derivation and formation of Latin words.

Nearly Ready, 8vo. and 12mo.

AN ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

FROM ENTIRELY ORIGINAL SOURCES.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

alter other . alter

alter the one . alter the other

Alter one — alius another

Jeremy Locke

John Dryden . Taylor

John Milton . Jeremy

Fletcher . Jeremy

Beaumont . Taylor

Suckling

all the best . all the wisest

Contenere omnus
intentique ora tenebant

Acts 28 . 14

and we travelled
toward Rome

how are you going
to manage it

"AUTHORISED SERIES"

OF

TEXT BOOKS,

Sanctioned by the Council of Public Instruction for use in the Grammar Schools of Ontario.

The following from the English Series we can supply at the very lowest prices, wholesale and retail. Large consumers of the Readers will be supplied on same terms as by publisher.

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.

ENGLISH.

TEXT BOOKS PRESCRIBED:

THE CANADIAN NATIONAL SERIES OF READING BOOKS. Authorized edition.

FIRST BOOK, with 31 illustrations, strongly bound in limp cloth. 5 cts.

FIRST BOOK, SECOND PART, 45 illustrations, strongly bound in limp cloth. 10 cts.

SECOND BOOK, 56 illustrations, strongly bound in cloth boards. 20 cts.

THIRD BOOK, 41 illustrations, strongly bound in cloth boards 30 cts.

FOURTH BOOK, 45 illustrations, strongly bound in cloth boards. 40 cts.

FIFTH BOOK, 50 illustrations, strongly bound in cloth boards. 50 cts.

MILLER'S ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR. (Authorized edition.) 50 cts.

A HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, in a Series of Biographical Sketches. By WM. FRANCIS COLLIER, LL.D. $1.

ARITHMETIC AND MATHEMATICS.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

PHYSICAL SCIENCE.

MISCELLANEOUS.